



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Edw T 1000, 300, 895

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



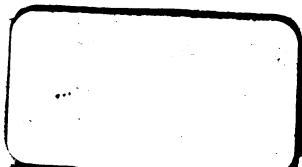
THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924



Marjorie Gurd.



3 2044 097 079 073







CÆSAR

FROM A BUST IN THE MUSEUM OF THE LOUVRE

THE  
GATE TO CÆSAR

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

BOSTON, U.S.A.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

1895



✓  
Eduet 1000.300.895

**HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY**  
GIFT OF  
**GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON**  
JANUARY 25 1914

**COPYRIGHT, 1891,**  
**BY WILLIAM C. COLLAR.**  

---

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.**

**TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.**  

---

**PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.**

## PREFACE.

---

THE recent discovery of a work of Aristotle has interested and delighted the whole learned world; but one may venture to say that if, instead, a book had been found written in the best period of the Latin language for the amusement or instruction of youth, by some Roman De Foe, or Goldsmith, or Lamb, or Burnett, there would be ten times the reason for rejoicing. Unhappily there is no likelihood that we shall ever congratulate ourselves on such a "find," for probably no such work ever existed. What a misfortune that it did not occur to Cicero to divert himself in some leisure hour by writing a story for Roman youth! Millions of boys and girls in these later ages would have had good reason to bless his name. Cæsar could have done it; but to him, too, the gods denied such an inspiration, and we must suffer for it. Seeing that he had composed a treatise on Latin Grammar, one almost wonders that a mind so original and fertile should not have conceived the idea of adapting his Gallic War, or some part of it, to the powers and comprehension of youth. What measureless gratitude would he not have won from unborn generations of schoolmasters, who have now to struggle desperately and often unavailingly to make clear to their pupils the meaning of his intricate periods, and untwist the strands of his knotty syntax!

Cæsar is a difficult author. Some parts of his Gallic War are as hard, or nearly as hard, as any prose Latin that has come down to us. Yet it has somehow strangely enough become the fashion to read that work first in a Latin course. My own conviction is that for young learners a year's reading in easier Latin is not too much before taking up the less difficult books of the Gallic War. Even then the transition to Cæsar comes with something of a shock; for the learner is soon and often brought face to face with sentences that seem to him of most bewildering intricacy, however they may, as commentators sometimes remark, beautifully illustrate most important principles of Latin order and construction. There is a sentence in the second book, by no means the most difficult one to be found, that extends through eighteen lines,—that is, something more than half a page,—containing twenty-one distinct ideas, and having the verb separated from its subject by ninety-four words.

I know no more disheartening task than that of undertaking to carry a class unprepared in age and knowledge of the language through Cæsar's Gallic War. Yet it is precisely this disheartening task that thousands of teachers are set to do, or set themselves to do, every year. The results are often dismal enough. Teachers are blamed, they blame themselves, they blame their pupils. Pupils may sometimes be stupid, teachers may lack knowledge of the language and the subject, but the fault may also lie wholly with the author or with the Latin language itself; if with the latter, there is no help. Latin, it must be confessed, is an exceedingly difficult language to learn. All the more reason then why, in attacking it, every unnecessary obstacle should be removed. We should make our approaches with caution

and skill; we should take it, if possible, *aperto latere*. We should not begin with a difficult work; or if, in the dearth of Latin suited to the juvenile mind, this is deemed unavoidable, common sense suggests the query, *why not remove provisionally<sup>1</sup> from the text those more intricate parts that discourage the learner and bar the way of progress?*

Cæsar knew how to write his own language well; but he wrote for men, he wrote with compression and in haste, and there are passages in his works that are tough reading for a good Latin scholar. It is the fashion to praise Cæsar's lucidity; but brevity and haste are not conducive to lucidity.

“Ther nys no werkman, what so ever he be,  
That may bothe werke wel, and hastily.  
This wol be doon at leyser parfityly.”

For my part I confess that I sometimes find him obscure. Moreover, when I am in doubt as to his meaning and appeal to the commentators, I find that they generally disagree and sometimes quarrel about the sense. Therefore to put young learners to reading Cæsar as his text stands, bristling with difficulties, before they have acquired anything more than a meagre vocabulary and gained a modicum of insight by some practice in reading easier Latin, is to set them at a task harder than that which Pharaoh set the Israelites.

I am of the opinion that, even when a fair working vocabulary has been acquired through some previous reading, there is no book of the Gallic War that does not require a certain degree of simplification to bring it to the level of the powers of young boys and girls. It is this conviction born of long observation of the vexation of spirit, discouragement, and waste of time by pupils in wrestling with difficulties that

<sup>1</sup> It is presumed that the learner will subsequently read the complete text.

inevitably floor them, that has prompted me to put my hand to this work, which, slight as it may seem, has cost me the leisure of many months. But I shall feel repaid ten-fold, if, through this little book, boys and girls are enabled to read Cæsar with less waste of time, more easily, with fresher interest, and added sense of power; if, in other words, it proves in reality what it is in name, a Gate to Cæsar.

A few words will be sufficient to explain the principle on which I have simplified Cæsar's text, the amount of excision, and the degree of change. It would have been a comparatively easy task to simplify the text by the mere process of omission, never deviating from the *ipsissima verba* of the author by so much as the change of a mode or tense. One could do this and still string together the *dissecta membra* of the text into something like a connected narrative. But that would be to preserve the integrity of the words at the expense of everything else, — inner relation, structure, style, spirit. Or the simplification might be effected by a virtual rewriting of the text, by amplification rather than suppression, coupled with changes in the collocation of words, where the arrangement seemed to obscure the meaning and perplex the learner.

My purpose and plan differed essentially from both these methods. My aim has been, first, to keep the narrative intact; second, to retain as much of the text as was consistent with the effort to disburden it of its greater difficulties; third, to make the fewest practicable changes in what was retained, save the modification of some verb forms, and the occasional rendering of indirect into direct discourse; fourth, very rarely to change the position of a word; finally, never to insert a word, except now and then

to supply a form plainly understood, or to introduce some connective, like *et, tum, itaque, autem, ergo, postremo*.

As to the amount of excision, I find that I have omitted almost exactly one-fifth of Cæsar's text.

If the beginner in Cæsar reads the simplified text and concurrently turns the Exercises into Latin, laying firm hold of the grammatical principles selected for illustration, I believe he will find the remaining difficulties of the original text not beyond his scope. I should even hope that he would then read with something of the joy of conscious power. If the reading of the texts and the writing of the Exercises should require more time than is usually spent on the second book of Cæsar, which, however, I doubt, I believe subsequent progress would still be rapid and satisfactory enough to amount to a net gain and saving of time.

It has seemed best to mark long vowels, except the vowels of final syllables and of monosyllables, the rules for which can be readily learned. I have, however, marked a few monosyllables, as a constant reminder to teachers who find their old pronunciation clinging to certain words. We used to say *his, sic, nōn, quīn, hōc*. These words, therefore, I have marked. On the other hand, one is in no danger of saying *dē, hī, sī, prō*, for old habit would not mislead.

I take pleasure in acknowledging my obligations to Mr. Alfred G. Rolfe for several useful criticisms, and to Miss Caroline Ober Stone for valuable corrections and for carefully reading the proof-sheets as far as the vocabularies. To Mr. Clarence W. Gleason I am specially indebted. But for his timely and generous aid in preparing both vocabularies, the publication of this book must have been very considerably delayed.

WILLIAM C. COLLAR.

SEACONNET, July 25, 1891.



## CONTENTS.



	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY NOTE. . . . .	x
SIMPLIFIED TEXT . . . . .	1-22
COMPLETE TEXT . . . . .	23-41
NOTES ON BOTH TEXTS. . . . .	43-71
EXERCISES ON SIMPLIFIED TEXT . . . . .	73-88
VOCABULARY. . . . .	89-123
ETYMOLOGICAL VOCABULARY. . . . .	125-141



## NOTE ON THE USE OF THE BOOK.

The Simplified Text and the Exercises based upon it are of the first importance. The *viva voce* translation of the Exercises, followed by the writing of them, will illustrate and help to implant in the memory the most important principles of syntax met with in the text. Let the teacher insist upon thorough work here, and he may safely omit other syntactical instruction.

But little power of reading Latin can be gained without making the acquisition of a working vocabulary a distinct object. The Latin synonyms and the Etymological Vocabulary may be made useful agents to that end. If the words added to each chapter are read aloud, reviewed, and compared where backward references are made, the learner will acquire a useful stock of synonyms easily, naturally, and with small expenditure of time.

It is often easier to retain in mind a number of words, grouped according to some principle of similarity or contrast, than a single word with nothing to hook it to the memory. For this reason it is recommended that the Etymological Vocabulary be often pressed into the service. Suppose, for example, the word *conspectus* occurs in the lesson. If the teacher will turn to page 138 and have the ten words read out under the root SPEC, he will multiply several times the chances that this particular word will be remembered on its next occurrence. He will have done much more. He will have increased the chances that nine other words will be lodged in the memory; and to each one a fresh interest will be added by its being seen in relation, not as an isolated, and therefore barren, fact.

The first vocabulary may be used for comparing in the text the different meanings and uses of the same word. It is through such comparisons that one gets at the heart and spirit of the language, while cultivating at the same time a mental habit of great value.

Having read the Simplified Text, the learner should be well equipped for wrestling with the difficulties that remain in the unchanged text, for he is already familiar with the thought and the language. Comparison of the two texts by the teacher, so far as time permits, may now be made to illustrate important principles, as of indirect discourse, which are here and there discussed in the notes.

# CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

## BOOK II.

B.C. 57; A.U.C. 697.



### THE BELGIAN LEAGUE DEFEATED.

#### SIMPLIFIED TEXT.

*The Belgæ form a league against the Romans.*

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Gallia, crēbri ad eum rŭmōres adferēbantur. Litteris item Labiēni certior fiōbat omnes Belgas contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter se dare. Coniūrandi hae erant causae: primum verēbantur ne ad se exercitus noster addūceretur; 5 deinde ab nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitābantur. Hi Germānos diūtius in Gallia versāri nōluerant et populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Gallia moleste ferēbant. Nōnnūllī mōbilitāte et levitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant. Ab nōnnūllis etiam sollicitābantur, 10 quod in Gallia a potentiōribus atque iis qui ad condūcendos homines facultātes habēbant, vulgo rēgna occupābantur; qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro cōsequi poterant.

crēber, frequens.

vereor, timeo.

deinde, tum.

versor: maneo, sum.

moleste, graviter.

studeo, cupio.

*Cæsar levies two legions and marches against them.*

2. Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus est Cæsar. Duas legiōnes in citeriōre Gallia novas cōscripsit. In interiōrem Galliam, qui hās legiōnes dēdūceret, Q. Peditum lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse  
5 inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. / Senones finitimi Belgis erant. Ea quæ apud Belgas geruntur cōgnōscunt Cæsaremque de hīs rēbus certiōrem faciunt. Hi cōstanter omnes nūntiāvērunt manus cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vēro nōn dubitāvit Cæsar quā ad eos  
10 proficiscerētur. Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fines Belgārum pervenit.

**nūntius**, rūmor.

**finitimus**: vicinus, propinquus.

**gero**: ago, facio.

**cōgo**, contige.

**condūco**, conligo.

**pervenio**, accēdo.

*The Remi at once show the white feather.*

3. Eo de imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Cæsar. Rēmi ad eum lēgātos Iccium et Andocumborium mīserunt, qui dixerunt se omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmāni permittere. "Rēmi neque cum Belgis reliquis  
5 cōsensērunt neque contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāvērunt." Parāti sunt obsides dare et Cæsaris imperāta facere et eum oppidis recipere et frūmento cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliqui omnes Belgæ in armis sunt. Germāni, qui cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēse cum hīs coniūnxērunt.  
10 Tantus est eōrum omnium furor ut ne Suessiōnes quidem dēterrere possint Rēmi. Suessiōnes frātres Rēmōrum cōsanguineique sunt eōdemque iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtuntur. Ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum iis habent."

**de imprōvisō**: subitō, repente.

**permitto**, dēdo.

**cōsentio**: contiūro, me coniungo.

**dēterreo**, dissuādeo.

*Cæsar learns the number of the enemy's forces.*

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae civitātes quantaque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plērīque Belgae sunt orti ab Germānis Rhēnumque antiquitus trāducti ibi cōsēdērunt, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt. Sōli fuērunt qui Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intra fīnes suos ingredi prohibuērunt. Qua ex re fiēbat ut māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritus in re militāri sūmerent. De numero eōrum omnia se habere explorāta Rēmi dicēbant. Quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus esset cōgnōverant. Plūrimum inter eos Bellovaci et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numero valēbant. Hi poterant cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; polliciti sunt ex eo numero ēlēcta sexāginta tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulābant. Suessiōnes Rēmōrum erant finitimi; 15 lātissimos ferācissimōsque agros possidēbant. Apud eos fuit rēx nostra etiam memoria Divitiacus, tōtius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit. Nunc erat rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque suam 20 belli summa dēlāta est.

**quaero, interrogo.****reperio, cōgnōsco.****orior, nāscor.****cōsīdo, me colloco.****spīritus: adrogantia, animi.****explōro, cōgnōsco.****valeo, possum.****cōnficio, comparo.****ferax, fertilis.****summa: cūra, imperium.***He takes hostages from the Remi and crosses the Axona.*

5. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre prīncipumque liberos obsides ad se addūci iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum

māgno opere cohortātus est. Rei pūblicae interest manus  
 5 hostium distinēri, ne cum tanta multitudīne ūno tempore  
 cōnfligendum sit. \* Id fieri potest, si suas cōpias Aedui  
 in fines Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agros popu-  
 lāri coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab se dīmittit. Postea  
 Caesar omnes Belgārū cōpias in ūnum locum coāctas  
 10 ad se venīre vidit neque iam longe abesse. Hōc ab iis  
 quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmis cōgnōvit. Tum  
 flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi  
 castra posuit. Quae res latus ūnum castrōrum rīpis flū-  
 minis mūniēbat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus  
 15 reddēbat. Commeātus etiam ab Rēmis reliquīsque cīvi-  
 tātibus sine periculo portāri poterant. In eo flūmine pōns  
 erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in altera parte flūminis  
 Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus reli-  
 quit; castra in altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque  
 20 duodēvīginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

iubeo, *impero.*

māgno opere, *vehementer.*

interest, *pertinet.*

distineo, *divido.*

cōnflīgo: *pūgno, dīmico.*

populor, *vāsto.*

cōgo, *condūco, 2.*

cōgnōsco, *reperio, 4.*

mātūro, *propero.*

commeātus, *cibus.*

### *How the Belgæ lay siege to a town.*

6. Ab hīs castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat mīlia passuum octo. Id ex itinere māgno impetu  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegre eo die sustentātum  
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārū oppūgnatio est  
 5 haec. Circumiecta multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus  
 undique in mūrum lapides iaciunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōri-  
 bus nūdātus est, testūdine facta portas succēdunt mūrum-  
 que subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta

multitūdo lapides ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūro cōsistendi potestas erat nulli. Postrēmo finem oppūgnandi nox 10 fēcit. Tum Iccius Rēmus, qui oppido praefuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sēse diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

**tōtus, omnis.**

**undique, ex omni parte.**

**ubi, cum.**

**nūdo, prīvo.**

**succēdo: accēdo, subeo.**

**subrao, suffodio.**

**cōnsisto, sto.**

**praesum, praefectus sum.**

**subsidium, auxilium.**

**sustineo, sustento.**

*They abandon the siege and turn against Caesar.*

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar Numidas et Crētas sagittarios et funditores Baleāres subsidio oppidanis mittit; quōrum adventu hostibus spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis con- 5 tendērunt et ab mīlibus passuum minus duobus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmo atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octo in lātitudinem patēbant.

**subsidium, auxilium, 6.**

**potlor, occupo.**

**discēdo, abeo.**

**paulisper, nōn diu.**

**moror, cunctor.**

**dēpopulor, vāsto.**

**contendo, mātūro, 5.**

**pateo, pertineo.**

*Caesar awaits the attack of the enemy.*

8. Caesar prīmo propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proelio supersedēre statuit; cotidie tamen quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri auderent periclitābātur. Locus erat pro castris ad aciem instruendam nātūra opportunus atque idōneus. Is 5 autem collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitie

ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum  
 loci acies instrūcta occupāre poterat. Atque ex utrāque  
 parte lateris dēiectus habēbat, et in frōntem lēniter fasti-  
 10 gātus paulatim ad plānitiem redībat. Ab utrōque latere  
 ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum  
 quadringentōrum et ad extrēmas fossas castella cōstituit  
 ibique tormenta conlocāvit, ne hostes ab lateribus pūg-  
 nantes suos circumvenire possent. Hōc facto duābus  
 15 legiōnibus quās proxime cōscripserat in castris relictis,  
 reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie cōstituit. Hostes  
 item suas cōpias ex castris ēductas instrūxerant.

**eximius**: *excellens, ēgregius.*

**idōneus**: *aptus, commodus.*

**opinio**, *fāma.*

**dēiectus**, *dēclivitas.*

**supersedeo**, *abstīneo.*

**fastīgātus**, *adclivis.*

**periclitor**: *tento, experior.*

**conloco**, *pōno.*

*Finally the enemy make a dash to cross the Axa.*

9. Palus erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium  
 exercitum. Hanc si nostri trānsīrent hostes exspectā-  
 bant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies con-  
 tendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundae ēius palūdis initium  
 5 faciunt, secundiōre equitum proelio nostris Caesar suos  
 in castra redūxit. Hostes prōtinus ex eo loco ad flūmen  
 Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra  
 dēmōnstrātum est. Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere  
 cōnāti sunt, ut castellum cui praeerat Q. Titurius lēgātus  
 10 expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potu-  
 issent, ut agros Rēmōrum populārentur commeātūque  
 nostros prohibērent.

**initium**, *prīncipium.*

**contendo**, *mātūro, 7.*

**secundus**, *prōsperus.*

**praesum**, *praefectus sum, 6.*

**prōtinus**: *statim, extemplo,*

**interscindo**, *abrumpo.*

*repente, subito.*

**commeātus**, *cibus, 5.*

*A battle follows, the Belgæ are defeated and disperse.*

10. Caesar omnem equitatum et levis armaturæ Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine adgressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Primos qui transierant equitatu 5 circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi de expugnando oppido spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi viderunt atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilium convocaverunt. Constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti. 10 Constituerunt etiam ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent ad eos defendendos undique convenirent. Quod eo consilio fecerunt, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent. Ad eam sententiam haec ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos 15 finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur non poterat.

**armatūra, arma.**

**acriter, vehementer.**

**adgredior, adior.**

**occido, concido.**

**progredior: prōcēdo, prōdeo.**

**constituo, statuo.**

**revertor, redeo.**

**decerto: pugno, dimico.**

**sententia, consilium.**

**moror, cunctor, 7.**

*They are pursued with awful slaughter.*

11. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hanc re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima 5 luce omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur



praemisit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cū legiōnibus tribus  
 subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia  
 passuum prōsecūti māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugien-  
 10 tium concidērunt. Ii ad quos ventum erat cōsistēbant  
 fortiterque impetum nostrōrum sustinēbant; sed priores,  
 quod abesse a periculo vidēbantur, exaudito clāmōre per-  
 turbātis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium pōnē-  
 bant. Ita sine ūllo periculo māgnam eōrum multitudinem  
 15 nostri interfēcērunt sub occāsumque sōlis dēstitērunt sēque  
 in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

cōstituo, statuo, 10.

streptus: clāmōr, fremitus.

cōsimilis, persimilis.

vereor, timeo, 1.

moror, cuncior, 7.

subsequor: prōsequor, īnsequor.

adorior, adgredior, 10.

concido, occido, 10.

cōnsisto, sto, 6.

sustineo, sustento, 6.

*A forced march and attack on Noviodunum. The town  
 surrenders.*

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar in fines Suessiōnum  
 exercitum dūxit et māgno itinere cōfecto ad oppidum  
 Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus,  
 quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, expugnāre  
 5 nōn potuit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessiōnum multi-  
 tudo in oppidum proxima nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneis  
 ad oppidum āctis, aggere iacto turribusque cōstitūtis,  
 māgnitudine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti  
 sunt Suessiōnes. Itaque lēgātos ad Caesarem de dēdi-  
 10 tiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmis ut cōservārentur im-  
 petrant.

cōnficio, perficio.

contendo, propero.

vacuus: carens, nūdus.

interim, interea.

ago: pello, dūco, traho.

permoveo, commoveo.

dēditio, traditio.

impetro, cōsequor.

*The Bellovaci also submit at Caesar's approach.*

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido trāditis in dēditionem Suessiōnes accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacos dūxit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter mīlia passuum quīn- 5 que abesset, omnes māiōres nātū ex oppido ēgressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēse in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset, pueri mulierēsque ex mūro passis manibus suo mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt. 10

trādo : do, dēdo.

me cōfero : me recipio, eo.

ēgredior, exeo.

coepl, incēpi.

puerl, liberi.

pando, tendo.

mōs, cōnsuētūdo.

peto, ōro.

*Divitiacus pleads earnestly for the Bellovaci.*

14. Pro hīs Divitiacus facit verba: "Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amīcitia cīvitatīs Aeduae fuērunt: impulsī a suis prīncipibus, qui dīcēbant Aeduos omnes indignitatēs contumēliāsque perferre, ab Aeduis dēfēcē- runt et populo Rōmāno bellum intulērunt. Ii qui ēius 5 cōnsili prīncipes fuērunt in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro hīs Aedui ut tua clēmētia ac mānsuētūdine in eos ūtāris. Quod si fēceris, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnes Belgas amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella 10 incidunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt."

impello : incito, indūco.

contumēlia, iniūria.

dēficio : dēsero.

mānsuētūdo, lēnitas.

auctōritas, grātia.

amplifico, augeo.

sustento, sustineo, 6.

cōnsuēscō, soleo.

*The temperance, courage, and patriotism of the Nervii.*

15. Caesar honōris Divitiaci atque Aeduōrum causa sēse eos in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitas māgna inter Belgas auctōritāte, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis  
 5 ex oppido conlātis, ab eo loco in fines Ambiānōrum pervēnit. Eōrum fines Nervii attingēbant; quōrum de nātūra mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullus aditus erat ad eos mercātōribus; nihil patiēbantur vīni reliquārumque rērum īferri, quod iis rēbus  
 10 relanguēscere animos et remitti virtūtem existimābant: erant homines feri māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitābant atque incūsābant reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Rōmāno dēdidissent.

**auctōritas, grātia, 14.**

**posco, impero.**

**cōfero, cōgo, 2.**

**attingo, contingo.**

**aditus, accessus.**

**patior, sino.**

**relanguēscō, effēminor.**

**remitto, minuo.**

**incūso, accūso.**

**dēdo, permitto.**

*Encamped on the Sabis the Nervii await the coming of Cæsar.*

16. Cum per eōrum fines trīdūum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabim flūmen ab castris suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse. Trāns id flūmen omnes Nervii cōsēderant adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectābant. Exspectābantur etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiæ  
 5 atque erant in itinere. Mulieres quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtiles vidērentur in eum locum cōniēcerant, quo propter palūdes exercitui aditus nōn esset.

**cōnsīdo, me colloco, 4.**

**cōniciō, dēpōno.**

**aditus, 15.**

*They plan to attack Cæsar's advance guard.*

17. His rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōres centuriōnēsque præmittit qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquīsque Gallis complūres Caesarem secūti ūna iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt. His dēmōstrārunt inter singulas legiōnes 5 impedimentōrum māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prīma legio in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sarcinis adorīri; qua pulsa futūrum ut reliquæ legiōnes contra cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervii autem antiquitus, quo facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedi- 10 rent, teneris arboribus incīsis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmis ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant ut īnstar mūri hae saepes mūnimenta præbērent, quo nōn modo nōn intrāri sed ne perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter āgminis nostri im- 15 pedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōsiliū Nervii existimāvērunt.

**idōneus:** *aptus, commodus*, 8.

**dēligo,** *ēligo*.

**intercēdo,** *intervenio*.

**sarcinae:** *impedimenta, onera*.

**adorior,** *adgredior*, 11.

**cōnsisto,** *sto*, 6.

**incido,** *accido*.

**īnstar:** *fōrma, similitūdo*.

**omitto,** *neglego*.

**existimo,** *puto*.

*The Roman camping-ground and the position of the enemy.*

18. Loci nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostri castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summo aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod supra nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eo flūmine pari adclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, ab superiōre parte silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intra 5 eas silvas hostes in occulto sēse continēbant; in aperto

loco secundum flūmen paucae statīōnes equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdo pedum circiter trium.

**summum, culmen.**

**dēclivis, prōclivis.**

**vergo, pertineo.**

**nāscor, orior, 4.**

**intrōrsus, intra.**

**in occulto, abditus.**

**statio, custōdia.**

**circiter, ad.**

*The plan of attack is skilfully carried out by the Nervii.*

19. Caesar equitātu praemisso subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis. Sed quod ad hostes adpropinquābat, cōnsuetūdine sua sex legiōnes expeditas dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitus impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legi-  
 5 ones, quae proxime cōscriptae erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi, cum hostium equitātu proelium commiserunt. Illi se identidem in silvas ad suos recipiēbant ac rursus ex silva in  
 10 nostros impetum faciēbant. Interim legiōnes sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnso castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostri exercitus ab iis qui in silvis abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subito omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostros equites fecērunt.  
 15 His facile pulsī ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūno tempore ad silvas et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostes vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

**subsequor, prōsequor, 11.**

**conloco, pōno, 8.**

**trāsgredior, trānseo.**

**identidem, iterum atque iterum.**

**rursus, iterum.**

**interim, interea, 12.**

**dīmētor, mētor.**

**lateo, me cēlo.**

**prōvolo, prōruo.**

**prōturbo, fugo.**

**paene, fere.**

**contendo, propero, 7.**

*But the soldiers and lieutenants know what to do.*

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum propinendum, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevit-  
tas et successus hostium impediēbat. Sed erat subsidio 5  
scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitāti, nō minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant. Praeterea ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discēdere  
vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem 10  
hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per se quae vidēbantur administrābant.

**propōno**, ostendo.

**successus**, accessus, 15.

**subsidium**, auxilium, 6.

**usus**, experientia.

**exercitatus**, peritus.

**commode**: apte, bene.

**praescribo**, praecipio.

**veto**, prohibeo.

**propinquitas**, vicinitas.

**administro**: prōvideo, ago.

*Fighting begins before the soldiers can arm themselves.*

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperātis ad cohortandos milites decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devēnit. Milites nō longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, 5  
quod nō longe hostes aberant, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum  
animus, ut nō modo ad insignia adcommodanda, sed 10  
etiam ad galeas induendas scūtisque tegimenta detrūdenda tempus defuerit. Quam in partem quisque ab opere casu

dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, ne in quaerendis suis pūgnandi tempus dīmitteret.

**dēvenio, pervenio.**

**adcommodo, apto.**

**pristinus: vetus, antiquus.**

**induo, induco.**

**perturbo, commoveo, 12.**

**dētrūdo, dētraho.**

**sustineo, sustento, 6.**

**cāsu, forte.**

**occurro, incido.**

**cōspicio, cōspicor.**

**exiguitas, brevis.**

**dīmitto, āmitto.**

*All is confusion in the battle; the commander can do little.*

22. Instrūcto exercitu magis ut loci nātūra dēiectus-  
que collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militāris  
ratio atque ordo postulābat, fiēbat ut aliae legiōnes alia  
in parte hostibus resisterent; saepibus autem dēnsissimis,  
5 ut ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impediē-  
bātur, ut neque certa subsidia conlocāri, neque ab ūno  
omnia imperia administrāri possent. Itaque in tanta  
rērum inīquitāte, fōrtūnae quoque ēventus varii sequē-  
bantur.

**dēiectus, dēclīvitas, 8.**

**administro, ago, 20.**

**ratio, scientia.**

**inīquitas, varietas.**

**intericio, interpōno.**

**ēventus, cāsus.**

*The battle seems to be going against Caesar.*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlites, ut in sinistra  
parte acie cōstitierant, Atrebates cursu āc lassitudīne  
exanimātos vulneribusque cōnfectos celeriter ex loco  
superiōre in flūmen compulērunt. Tum eos trānsīre  
5 cōnantes insecūti, gladiis māgnam partem eōrum inter-  
fēcērunt. Ipsi trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in  
locum inīquum prōgressi, hostes redintegrāto proelio in  
fugam cōniēcērunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae  
legiōnes, ūndecima et octāva, ex loco superiōre in ipsīs

flūminis rīpis proeliābantur. At tōtis fere a frōnte et 10  
ab sinistra parte nūdātis castris, omnes Nervii cōfer-  
tissimo āgmine, duce Boduōgnāto, qui summam imperi  
tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars aperto  
latere legiōnes circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum  
locum petere coepit. 15

**lassitūdo**, *dēfatigatio*.  
**cōfectus**, *dēfessus*.  
**compello**, *ago*.  
**redintegrō**, *renovo*.

**cōfertus**, *dēnsus*.  
**summa**, *cūra*, 4.  
**contendo**, *propero*, 12.  
**peto**, *accurro*.

*It is beginning to look very dark for the Romans.*

24. Eōdem tempore equites nostri levisque armātūrae  
pedites, qui cum iis ūna fuerant, cum se in castra recipe-  
rent, hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem  
fugam petēbant; et cālōnes, praedandi causa ēgressi,  
cum respēxissent et hostes in nostris castris versārī 5  
vīdissent, praecipites fugae sēse mandābant. Simul  
eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremi-  
tusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterriti ferē-  
bantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti sunt equites  
Trēveri, qui auxili causa ab civitāte ad Caesarem mīssi 10  
vēnerant. Ergo cum multitudīne hostium castra com-  
plēri, legiōnes premi et paene circumventas tenēri, cālō-  
nes, equites, funditōres in omnes partes fugere vīdissent,  
dēspērātis nostris rēbus, domum contendērunt atque Rō-  
mānos pulsos superātōsque civitāti renūtiāvērunt. 15

**armātūra**, *arma*, 10.  
**me reciplo**, *me cōfero*, 13.  
**occurro**, *incīdo*, 21.  
**ēgredior**, *exeo*, 13.  
**versor**, *sum occupātus*, 1.  
**mando**, *commendo*.

**fremitus**, *strepitus*, 11.  
**orior**, *nāscor*, 4.  
**premo**, *urgeo*.  
**paene**, *fere*, 19.  
**pello**: *fugo*, *prōturbo*, 19.  
**supero**, *vinco*.



*Will Cæsar's coolness and courage save his army?*

25. Caesar ab decimæ legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus suos urgēri et duodecimæ legiōnis cōnfertos mīlites sibi ipsos ad pūgnam esse impedimento vīdit. Quartæ cohortis omnes centuriōnes occīsi sunt  
 5 et, sīgnifero interfecto, sīgnum est amīssum. Reliquārum cohortium omnes fere centuriōnes aut vulnerāti aut occīsi sunt, in hīs prīmipilus P. Sextius Baculus, fortissimus vir, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectus ut iam se sustinēre nōn posset. His rēbus reliquos esse tardiōres  
 10 vīdit Caesar et nōnnūllos dēserto proelio excēdere ac tēla vitāre; hostes autem neque a fronte ex infēriōre loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angusto, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti posset. Tum vērō scūto ūni mīliti dētracto,  
 15 quod ipse eo sine scūto vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātis, reliquos cohortātus mīlites sīgna inferre et manipulos laxāre iūssit, quo facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventu spe inlāta mīlitibus ac redintegrāto animo paulum hostium impetus  
 20 tardātus est.

**urgeo**, *premo*, 24.

**cōnfertus**, *dēnsus*, 23.

**sīgnifer**, *aquīlifer*.

**amitto**, *dimitto*, 21.

**fere**, *paene*, 19.

**cōnfectus**, *dēfessus*, 23.

**excēdo**, *ezeo*.

**subeo**, *succēdo*.

**intermitto**: *dēsino*, *dēsisto*.

**insto**: *urgeo*, *premo*, 24.

**dētraho**, *rapio*.

**laxo**, *aperio*.

**infero** (2): *do*, *adfero*.

**redintegrō**, *renovo*, 23.

*A shifting scene. Pull Romans, pull Nervii!*

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quæ iūxta cōstiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnos mīlitum monuit ut paulātīm sēse legiōnes coniungerent. Quo

facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, audācius resistere  
 ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim milites legiōnum 5  
 duārum, quae in novissimo āgmine praesidio impedimen-  
 tis fuerant, proelio nūtiātō cursu incitātō in summo colle  
 ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hos-  
 tium potitus decimam legiōnem subsidio nostris mīsīt.  
 Qui cum quo in loco res esset, quantōque in periculo cas- 10  
 tra et legiōnes et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent,  
 nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliqui fēcērunt.

<b>lūxta, prope.</b>	<b>paulātīm, gradātīm.</b>	<b>potlor, occupo, 7.</b>
<b>cōnsisto, 6.</b>	<b>interim, interea, 12.</b>	<b>versor, sum, 1.</b>
<b>urgeo, 25.</b>	<b>cōspicio, video.</b>	<b>cōgnōsco, reperio, 4.</b>

*In the fierce wrestle the brave Nervii go under.*

27. Hōrum adventu tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta  
 ut nōstri, etiam qui vulneribus cōfecti prōcubuissent,  
 proelium redintegrārent; equites vērō, ut turpitūdinem  
 fugae virtūte dēlērēt, omnibus in locis pūgnae se legiō-  
 nāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrēma 5  
 spe salutis māximam virtūtem praestitērunt; nam cum  
 prīmi eōrum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus comitibus  
 insistiēbant atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnābant; hīs  
 dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, cēteri ut ex tumulo  
 tēla in nostros cōniciēbant et pila intercepta remittēbant: 10  
 ut iudicārī dēbēret nōn nēquiquam tantae virtutis homi-  
 nes ausos esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altis-  
 simas rīpas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex  
 difficillimis animi māgnitūdo redēgerat.

<b>prōcumbo, prōcido.</b>	<b>laceo, prōcumbo.</b>
<b>turpitūdo: ignōminia, infāmia.</b>	<b>coacervo: congero, cōgo.</b>
<b>dēleo, exstinguo.</b>	<b>cadāver, corpus.</b>
<b>extrēmus, ultimus.</b>	<b>nēquiquam, frūstra.</b>
<b>praesto: praebeo, ostento.</b>	<b>redligo, facio.</b>

*Why slay the poor remnant? Let them live.*

28. Hōc proelio facto et prope ad interneciōnem gente  
 āc nōmine Nerviorum redācto, māiōres nātu, quōs ūna  
 cum pueris mulieribusque in palūdes cōiectos dixerāmus;  
 cōsēnsu omnium qui supererant lēgātos ad Caesarem  
 5 mīserunt sēque ei dēdidērunt. Postea in commemoranda  
 civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad tres senātōres, ex  
 hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentos qui arma ferre  
 possent, sēse redāctos esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar ut in  
 miseros āc supplices ūsus misericordia vidērētur, dīli-  
 10 gentissime cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti  
 iūssit et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūria et maleficio se  
 suōsque prohibērent.

**prope**, *paene*, 19.

**internecio**, *interitus*.

**redigo**, *redūco*.

**pueri**, *liberi*, 13.

**cōnicio**, *dēpōno*, 16.

**dēdo**, *permitto*, 15.

**commemoro**, *nārro*.

**finitimus**, *vicinus*, 2.

*The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance.*

29. Aduātuci, qui cum omnibus cōpiis auxilio Nervii  
 veniēbant, hāc pūgna nūntiāta ex itinere domum revertē-  
 runt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in  
 ūnum oppidum ēgrege nātūra mūnītum contulērunt.  
 5 Quod ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rūpes  
 dēspectūsque habēbat, sed ūna ex parte lēniter adlīvis  
 aditus relinquebātur; quem locum duplici altissimo mūro  
 mūnierant; tum māgni ponderis saxa et praeacūtas trabes  
 in mūro conlocābant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque  
 10 prōgnāti, qui, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque  
 Italiam facerent, custōdiam ex suis āc praesidium sex  
 milia hominum reliquērunt. Hi post eōrum obitum

multos annos a finitimis exagitāti, cōnsēnsu eōrum omnium hunc sibi domicilio locum dēlēgērunt.

**revertor**, *redeo*, 10.

**cūnctus**, *omnis*.

**ēgrege**: *optime, eximie*, 8.

**dēspectus**, *prōspectus*.

**lēniter**, *paulatim*.

**aditus**, *accessus*, 15.

**conloco**, *pōno*, 8.

**prōgnātus**, *ortus*, 4.

**obitus**, *interitus*, 28.

**dēligo**, *ēligo*, 17.

*From their walls they taunt the Romans.*

**30.** Āc primo adventu exercitus nostri crēbras ex oppido excursiōnes faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vālo pedum XII in circuitu XV mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūnti oppido sēse continēbant. Ubi vineis āctis aggere exstrūcto turrim 5 procul cōnstitui vidērunt, primum inrīdēre ex mūro atque increpitāre vōcibus coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tanto spatio instruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim homines tantulae statūrae turrim tanti oneris in mūro sēse conlocāre cōfiderent? 10

**adventus**, *accessus*, 15.

**crēber**, *frequens*, 1.

**excursio**, *ēruptio*.

**cōnstituo**, *pōno*.

**inrīdeo**, *dērideo*.

**increpito**, *maledico*.

**tantulus**, *parvulus*.

**onus**, *pondus*.

*But soon they lose confidence and offer to surrender.*

**31.** Ubi vēro turrim movēri et adpropīnquāre moenibus vidērunt, nova atque inūsītāta specie commōti lēgātos ad Caesarem de pāce mīsērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūti sunt: Aduātuci nōn existimant Rōmānos sine ope dīvīna bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnes tanta 5 celeritāte prōmovēre possint; itaque se suaque omnia eōrum potestāti permittunt. Ūnum petunt: si fōrte

Caesar pro sua clēmētia ac mānsuētūdine statuerit  
 Aduātucos esse cōservandos, ne eos armis dēspoliet.  
 10 Omnes fere finitimi sunt inimici ac eōrum virtūti invidēt,  
 a quibus se dēfendere trāditis armis nōn poterunt. Sibi  
 praestet, si in eum cāsum dēdūcantur, quamvis fōrtūnam  
 a populo Rōmāno pati, quam ab inimicis per cruciātum  
 interfici.

**novus, mirus.**

**inūsītātus:** *insolitus, novus.*

**species, facies.**

**modus, ratio.**

**ops, auxiliū.**

**permitto, dēdo, 15.**

**peto, ōro, 13.**

**mānsuētūdo, lēnitas, 14.**

**statuo, cōstituo, 10.**

**fere, paene, 25.**

**cāsus, fātum, 22.**

**dēdūco, redigo, 28.**

*They must disarm, but are promised protection.*

**32.** Ad haec Caesar respondit: "Magis cōsuētūdine  
 mea quam merito vestro cīvitātem cōservābo, si prius  
 quam mūrum aries attigerit, vos dēdideritis: sed dēdi-  
 tiōnis nūlla est condicio nisi armis trāditis. Id quod in  
 5 Nervii feci faciam finitimisque imperābo ne quam iniū-  
 riam dēditiciis populi Rōmāni inferant." Re nūntiāta  
 ad suos, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. Armōrum  
 tanta multitūdō de mūro in fossam quae erat ante oppi-  
 dum iacta est, ut prope summam mūri aggerisque alti-  
 10 tūdinem acervi eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars  
 tertia, ut postea perspectum est, cēlāta atque in oppido  
 retenta est. Deinde portis patefactis eo die pāce sunt  
 ūsi oppidāni.

**prius quam, ante quam.**

**dēditio, trāditio, 12.**

**finitimus, vicinus, 2.**

**infero: fero, facio.**

**prope, paene, 28.**

**circiter, ad, 19.**

**perspicio, intellego.**

**patefacio, aperio.**

*A brave dash for freedom, but a terrible fate.*

**33.** Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit. Oppidani consilio ante inito, ut intellectum est, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repente ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta ex proximis castellis eo concursus est. Ibi pugnatum est acriter ab hostibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos 10 qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisus ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intronmissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi 15 universam Caesar vendidit. Ab iis qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relatus est milium quinquaginta trium.

**intellego, perspicio, 32.**

**denique, saltem.**

**indiliger, neglegenter.**

**arduus, difficilis.**

**repentinus, subitus.**

**eruptio, excursio, 30.**

**significatio, signum.**

**iniquus, incommodus.**

**universus, totus.**

**refero, renuntio.**

*All the maritime nations submit to the Romans.*

**34.** Eodem tempore a P. Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esvios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse 5 redactas.

**attingo, tango.**

**dicto, imperium.**

**redigo, paco.**

*Gaul lies crushed and bleeding. Rome rejoices and thanks the gods.*

**35.** Hīs rēbus gestis omni Gallia pācāta, tanta hūius belli ad barbaros opīnio perlāta est uti ab iis nātīōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent mitterentur lēgāti ad Caesarem, qui se obsides datūras, imperāta factūras polli  
 5 cērentur. Quās lēgātīōnes Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Illyricumque properābat, inīta proxima aestāte ad se reverti iūssit. Ipse in Carnūtes, Andes Turonēsque, quae cīvī-  
 tātes propīnquae hīs locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hibernācula dēductis, in Ītaliā profectus  
 10 est. Ob eāsque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quīndecim supplicatio dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

pāco, redigo, 34.

opīnio, fāma, 8.

propero, mātūro, 5.

īneo, incipio.

propīnquus: vicīnus, fīnitīmus, 2.

accido, contingo.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

*LIBER SECUNDUS.*

B.C. 57; A.U.C. 697.

THE BELGIAN LEAGUE DEFEATED.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores adferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare. 5  
Coniurandi has esse causas: primum quod vererentur ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, — partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque invetera- 10  
scere in Gallia moleste ferebant; partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque iis qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro 15  
consequi poterant.

2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et in ita aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Q. Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, 20



ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiore faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

3. Eo cum de improvviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborium primos civitatis miserunt qui dicerent: 'Se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolant sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, detertere poterint quin cum his consentirent.'

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedis Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata, Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari

sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus adfinitatibusque coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute 5 et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suesiones suos esse finitimos: latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam 10 memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam; ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque suam totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere nu- 15 mero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia, Morinos XXV milia, Menapios VII milia; Caletos X milia; Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem; 20 Aduatucos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia.

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principum- 25 que liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confi- 30 gendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coe-

perint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit neque iam longe abesse ab iis quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, 5 quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum 10 portari posset efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum XII vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

15 6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moe- 20 nibus undique in murum lapides iaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppug- 25 nandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

30 7. Eo de media nocte Caesar isdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum

adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris 5 omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

8. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo 15 — quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat — ab 20 utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta conlocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire 25 possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant. 30

9. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes expecta-

bant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum  
5 proelio nostris Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat  
10 Q. Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commetatuque nostros prohiberent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum  
15 et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine adgressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes  
20 multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res  
25 frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis  
30 copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpro-

pinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

11. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret 5 et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen 10 moraretur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit; T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem 15 eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine ad quos ventum erat consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent; priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus 20 omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt. 25

12. Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus 30 esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit.

Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto  
5 turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt et petentibus Remis ut conservarentur impetrant.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque  
10 ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quin-  
15 que abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro  
20 passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

14. Pro his Divitiacus — nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui  
25 dicerent Aeduos ab Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui eius consili principes fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his  
30 Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes

Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque 5 hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido conlatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaeque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar 10 cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum inferri, quod iis rebus relanguescere animos eorum et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquos 15 Belgas qui se populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem proiecissent; confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non 20 amplius milia passuum x abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur; expectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum 25 copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex 30 deditiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex



captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque  
5 esse quicquam negoti, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Aduvabat etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant,  
10 quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis) quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, cre-  
15 brisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae saepes munitamenta praeberent, quo non modo non intrari sed ne perspicere quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii  
20 existimaverunt.

18. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari adclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic  
25 et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimos apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspicere posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo  
30 pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac

Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostes adpropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta conlocarat; inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis 5 erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca 10 aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab iis qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proeli convenerat, ut intra 15 silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsus ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine 20 et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt.

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma con- 25 curri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitates et successus hostium impediabat. His 30 difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio—scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid

feri oporteret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et  
5 celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi  
15 causa profectus pugnantis occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia adcommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detruenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad  
20 haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

22. Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae  
25 alia in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia conlocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno  
30 omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

**23.** Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates — nam his ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insecuti gladiis 5 magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi, rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, 10 quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce 15 Boduognato qui summam imperi tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

**24.** Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium 20 impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo iugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et 25 hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilli causa ab civitate 30 ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium

castra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos  
5 superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum conlatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi  
10 ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit — quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut iam se sustinere non  
15 posset, reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit,  
20 neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset — scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius  
25 gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe inlata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum  
30 monuit ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius

alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur; et T. Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gererentur conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his deiectis et coaceratis cadaveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumultu tela in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

28. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad interneccionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil

- impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt; et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum milibus LX  
5 vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.
- 10 29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie naturae munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu  
15 partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter adclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro conlocabant. Ipsi erant ex  
20 Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum  
25 multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias inlatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.
30. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum  
30 nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum XII in circuitu XV milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim

procul constitui viderunt, primum inridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae — nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum 5 brevis nostrae contemptui est — tanti oneris turrin in muro sese conlocare confiderent?

**31.** Ubi vero moveri et adpropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: 10  
 ‘Non existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere’ dixerunt. ‘Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis 15 audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano 20 pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuissent.’

**32.** Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent; sed 25 deditiois nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. Se id quod in Nervii fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent.’ Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro 30 in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum



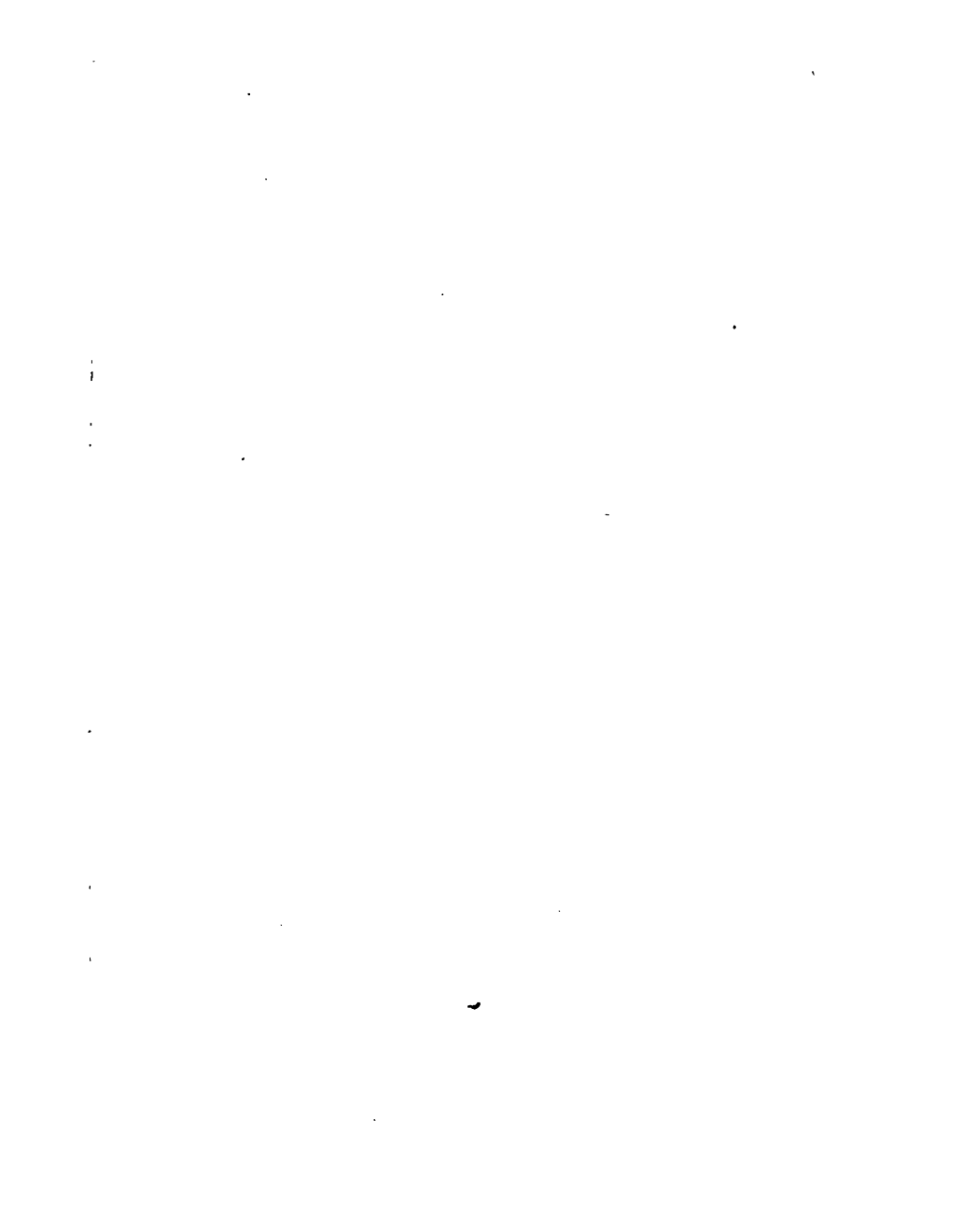
adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

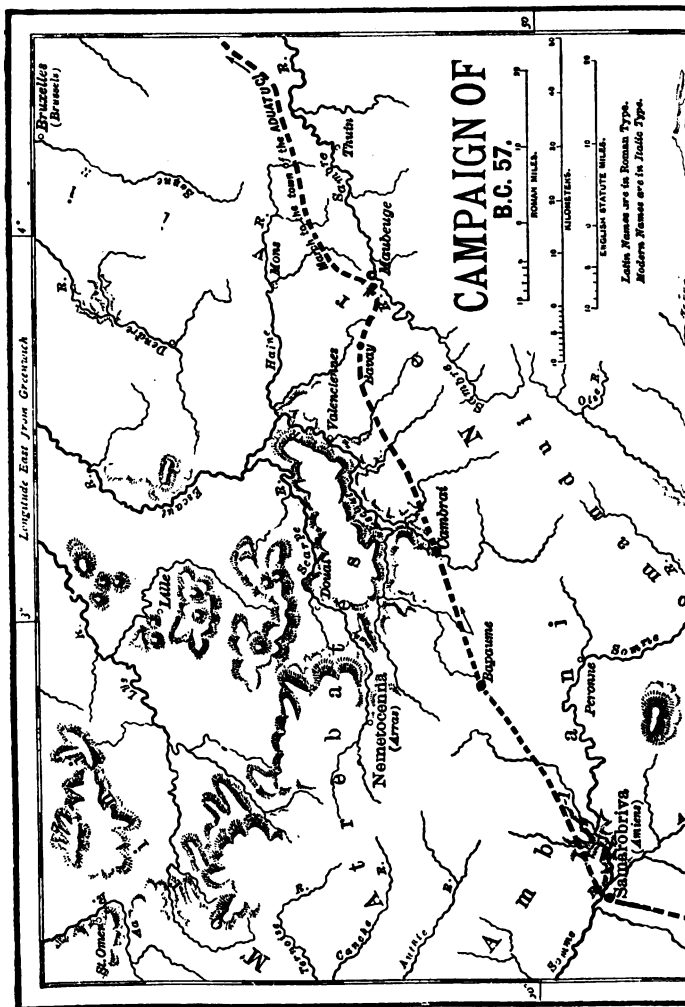
**33.** Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant — partim cum iis quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, 10 partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant — tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta ex proximis 15 castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes 20 salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab iis qui emerant capitum numerus 25 ad eum relatus est milium quinquaginta trium.

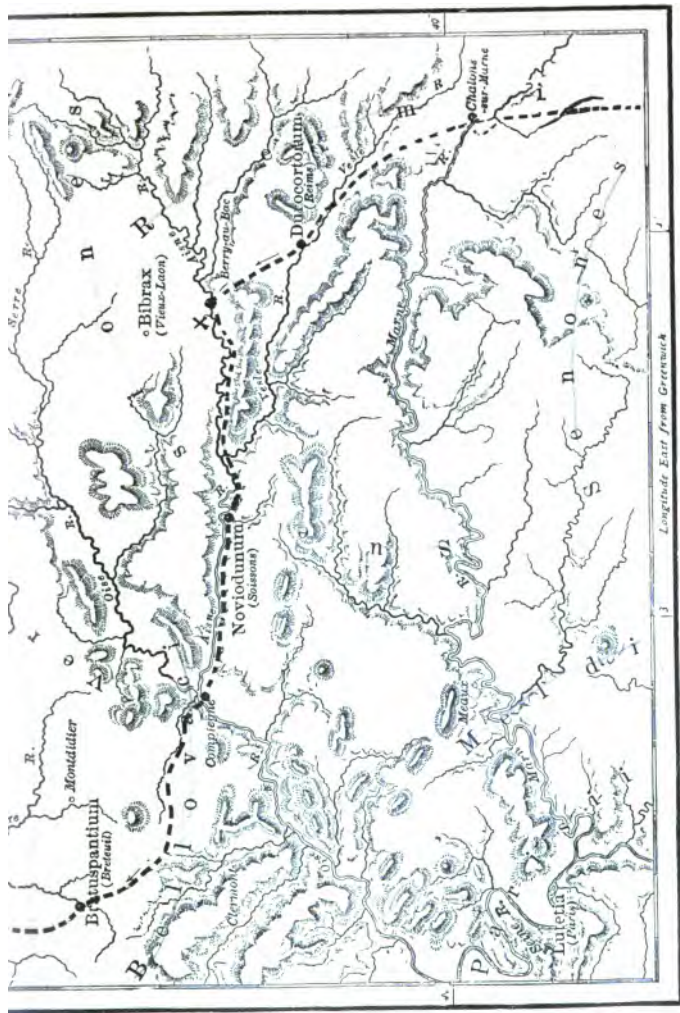
**34.** Eodem tempore a P. Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esvios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes 30 eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

**35.** His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab iis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyri- 5 cumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italiam profectus est. Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim 10 supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.









I  
the  
me  
ser  
dis  
es  
of  
th  
w  
t  
c

## NOTES.

---

**INTRODUCTORY NOTE.**—To translate Latin into English is to express the meaning of the Latin in English words and in the English idiom. But the meaning must be discovered before it can be expressed. Discovering the sense is, therefore, a process preparatory to translation, but yet measurably distinct from it. For discovering the meaning, the golden rule is, *Take words and clauses in the order in which they stand.* If the first chapter of this book were rendered into English words exactly in the Latin order, the thought would be readily apprehended by any one quite unacquainted with Latin. Such a word for word rendering, mental or oral, is for the beginner a necessary preliminary to translation, but, I repeat, must not be confounded with translation. For that, the golden rule is, *Express the thought in pure English, without admixture of Latin idiom.*

---

Notes under the heading **CHAP.** refer to the simplified text; those that follow, under the heading **PAGE**, supplement the former and refer to the unchanged text. The grammatical references are to the Latin Grammars of Allen & Greenough and Harkness.

### **CHAP. 1,**

- line 2. **certior fēbat**: *he was made more certain = he was informed.*  
**fēbat**: the passive of **facio**. Review the forms. 142;  
H. 294.
4. **Coniūrandi**: pronounce the *i* of the second syllable like *y*.  
5. **verēbantur**: the subject is **Belgae**, understood; supply the same subject for **sollicitābantur**.  
**ad se**: refers to the subject of **verēbantur**.  
6. **Germānos**: subject-accusative of **versāri**; *that the Germans should remain*.  
8. **exercitum**: subject-accusative of **hiemāre** and **inveterāscere**.  
**inveterāscere**: *get a foothold*; but what is its primary meaning from its derivation?



line 10. **imperīis**: 227 e, 3; H. 385.

11. **is**: supply mentally **ab** before it.

13. **qui**: *and these*, referring to **potentiōres**, etc.

**eam rem**: read again the preceding sentence, and you will see to what **eam rem** refers.

**imperio nostro**: *under our* (i.e. Roman) *rule*. The ablative implies condition, and the meaning is, *if we should get the sovereignty*. 255, d, 4; H. 431, 2, (3).

#### PAGE 23,

1. **ita uti**: *as*.

3. **Labīēni**: Cæsar's lieutenant was now in the country of the Sequani. See a map of **Gallia**.

4. **quam**: *whose country*. We might expect **quos** referring to **Belgas**, but the relative is made to agree with the predicate noun **partem**.

6. **has esse causas**: depending on **rūmōres adferēbantur**, like **Belgas . . . confūrāre** and **obsides . . . dare**. 272; H.

7. **omni . . . Gallia**: all except their country.

**pācāta**: the Romans, with cruel humor, called a country "pacified" when they had enslaved it.

8. **partim qui**: *some of whom*.

9. **ut . . . ita**: *as . . . so*.

11. **partim qui**: *others of whom*.

12. **ab nōnnūllis etiam**: these, then, are the third class by whom it is said, **Belgae sollicitābantur**: first, the conservative and patriotic; second, the restless and dissatisfied; third, the selfish and ambitious.

#### CHAP. 2,

2. **interiōrem Galliam**: *the interior of Gaul*; that is, Gaul beyond the Alps. Refer constantly to a map.

3. **qui . . . dēdūceret**: **qui** refers to **Q. Pedium**, and the clause **qui . . . dēdūceret** denotes purpose, *to lead*.

4. **Ipse**: supply **Caesar**.

6. **Ea** = **eas res**, as shown by **rēbus** following.

8. **manus cōgi**: *that parties of men were gathering*. The construction is the same as **Belgas . . . confūrāre**, in chap. 1.

9. **condūci**: *was mustering*; a very different meaning in chap. 1. **quā** . . . **proficiscerētur**: *to march*. What literally?

## PAGE 23,

line 18. **inita aestate** : *when summer had begun* = *at the beginning of summer* ; marks the time of **dēdūceret**, not of **misit**.

## PAGE 24,

1. **Dat negōtium** : *he charges*. What literally ?
2. **ut** (same as **ut**) . . . **cōgnōscant** : *to find out* ; the clause depends on **dat negōtium**.
3. **se** : refers to Caesar.
4. **certiōrem faciant** : compare the passive form in chap. 1.
5. **dubitandum** : in full the sentence would be, **Caesar dubitandum esse sibi nōn existimāvit** ; and the word for word rendering, *Caesar did not think an-obligation-of-hesitating to be to himself*. Translate, *he ought to hesitate*.

## CHAP. 3,

1. **Et** : that is, **ad fines Belgārum**. See the end of chap. 2.
3. **se . . . permittere** : here **se** is the subject-accusative of **permittere**.  
**in fidem** : *to the protection*.
6. **Caesaris imperāta facere** : *to do what Caesar required*.  
Literally what ?
7. **oppidis recipere** : in meaning = **in oppida recipere**.  
**cēteris** : not *other*, but *all other*. Their submission is abject.
9. **sēse** : not different from **se**.
10. **Suessiōnes** : the object of **dēterrere**.
12. **iūre** : *constitution*.  
**Isdem** : oftener written **Isdem**, 101, c.

## PAGE 24,

9. **omni opīniōne** : *than any one could expect*. 247, b ; H. 417.
10. **ex Belgis** = **Belgārum**, or **inter Belgas**.
12. **qui dicerent** : compare **qui dēdūceret**, p. 23, l. 19, and note on simplified text.  
**se** : the object (with **sua omnia** = *their all*) of **permittere**.  
Another **se** must be mentally supplied as the subject of **permittere**.
18. **incolant** : why not **incolunt**, for it must be translated as if it were **incolunt** ? Because the clause **qui . . . incolant** depends on the clause **Germānos . . . confūxisse**.

It is therefore a *dependent clause of indirect discourse*, and as such must have the subjunctive. Thoroughly master this, the most important principle of Latin syntax. Mark how the descriptive clause, **qui . . . incolant**, is framed into the main clause.

- line 19. **furōrem**: the politic or cowardly Remi considered the love of liberty and independence of their brother Belgæ *blind passion*.
20. **qui . . . ūtantur**: *though they . . . enjoyed*. **qui**, then, must sometimes be rendered *though he, though they*, etc., but only when the subjunctive follows.
21. **ūtantur**: supply immediately following **atque**.
22. **ipsis**: refers to **Rēmi**.
23. **quīn . . . cōnsentirent**: *from . . . uniting*. Compare **quīn . . . proficiscerētur**, p. 24, l. 6, and note on simplified text.

#### CHAP. 4,

1. **quantae**: refers to extent of country and population.  
**in armis essent**: connect with **quae cīvitātes**: *what states were in arms, and how powerful they were*.
2. **quid in bello possent**: a literal translation, *what they could (do) in war*, does not convey the meaning. Render, *what force they could bring into the field*.
4. **ibi**: **cis Rhēnum**.
6. **ex re**: equivalent to **ex causa**.
7. **fiēbat**: *it was coming about*. The Remi said, in direct discourse, **fit**; and below, **sūmant**.  
**spīritus**: means in the singular *air*, and is here used just as we use "airs," in the phrase "to put on airs."
8. **omnia . . . explorāta**: *full information*.
9. **Quantam quisque**: notice the order. **Quisque** likes to stand after **quantus**, **quotus**, **se**, and **suus**; here it means *each nation*.
11. **Plūrimum . . . valēbant**: about equivalent to **plūrimum poterant**, *had the most power*.
18. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*.
19. **Britanniae**: "the first mention of Britain by a Roman author."

## PAGE 24,

- line 27. **propter fertilitatem**: to be connected with **cōnsēdisse**.  
 28. **incolerent**: why not **incolēbant**? See note on p. 24, l. 18,  
 qui . . . **incolant**.  
 29. **memoria**: *within the memory*; but two lines below, *because of the memory*.

## PAGE 25,

10. **nostra etiam memoria**: compare **patrum nostrōrum memoria**, p. 24, l. 29.  
 13. **obtinerit**: *held, not obtained*, which is usually expressed  
 by **adsecūtus est**, **cōsecūtus est**, or **adeptus est**.  
 15. **omnium voluntāte**: *with the assent of all*.  
 23. **arbitrāri**: that is, **Rēmos arbitrāri**.

## CHAP. 5,

2. **obsides**: *as hostages*, in apposition with **liberos**. What  
 would have been the fate of these, if the chieftains had  
 broken their pledges?  
 4. **Rēi publicae interest**: *it concerns the (Roman) republic*.  
 The real subject of **interest**, represented in English by  
 it, is **manus hostium distīnēri**.  
**manus**: the subject-accusative of **distīnēri**, *to be kept from*  
*uniting*.  
 5. **ne . . . cōfligendum sit**: *that it may not be necessary to*  
*fight*.  
 7. **intrōdūxerint**: the Roman way of speaking is: this can  
 be done, if that *shall be done*, or *shall have been done*; hence  
 the future perfect. But mark that such a future or future  
 perfect is often best rendered by a present.  
 9. **coāctas . . . venīre**: *having been assembled . . . to be com-*  
*ing = had assembled . . . and were coming*.  
 10. **vīdit = intellēxit**.  
**neque iam = et iam nōn**.  
**iis**: take with **explōrātōribus**.  
 13. **quae res**: that is, his crossing the river and fixing his  
 camp there.  
 14. **post eum quae essent = ea quae post eum essent**,  
*his rear*. What should you expect in place of **eum**?  
**tūta**: goes with the whole expression, **post eum quae**  
**essent**.

- line 16. **portāri** : *be brought down the river to him.*  
 19. **in altitūdinem** : *to the height.*  
 20. **duodēviginti pedum** : that is, **in lātitudinem**, *in width.*

## PAGE 25,

24. **liberaliterque oratione prosecutus** : **liberaliter** means *in a generous or kindly manner* ; **oratione** indicates in what sense **prosecutus** is to be taken, *accompanying with words* ; finally, **prosequor** has its common meaning of *accompany*, but with the meaning unusually applied : *Cæsar had encouraged the Remi, and he accompanies the encouragement with kind words. Translate, Cæsar encouraging the Remi and adding kind words.*
29. **communis salutis** : by the *common interests* Cæsar means those of the Ædui and the Romans.
30. **confingendum sit** : compare **dubitandum (esse)** p. 24, l. 5, and read the note. Here, as there, **sibi**, referring to Cæsar and the Ædui, must be mentally supplied, showing for whom the duty or necessity of action (hesitating, fighting) exists.
31. **Id fieri posse** : depends upon **docet**. To what does **id** refer ?

## PAGE 26,

1. **Postquam . . . vidit . . . cognovit, . . . maturavit** : *when he saw . . . and found out, (then) . . . he hastened.*
3. **neque . . . cognovit** : *and from those scouts, etc., found out that they (the Belgæ) were now not far distant.*
8. **et** connects **reddēbat** and **efficiēbat**, which have the same subject, **quæ res**. The order makes this sentence difficult. Cæsar might have written : **et efficiēbat ut commeātus ab Rēmis reliquisque civitatibus sine periculo ad eum portāri posset**. The order is so perplexed and perplexing because Cæsar wrote in haste, and because he began with the word which was uppermost in his mind, **commeātus**.

## CHAP. 6,

2. **ex itinere** : *immediately after their march.*  
 3. **sustentatum est** : *the Remi held out.* What literally ?

line 4. **Gallōrum . . . oppugnatio**: *the mode of attacking towns common to the Gauls and Belgæ.*

5. **tōtis moenibus**: dative, though by some thought to be an ablative, *all around the walls.* 228; H. 386, 2.

7. **testūdine facta**: *forming a testudo.* What the soldiers did was to lap their shields over their heads.

8. **cum**: *since.* What mode follows **cum** in this sense?

11. **nūntium . . . mittit**: one of the expressions that are followed by the accusative and infinitive; here, **sēse . . . posse.** Compare in chapter 1, **certior fiēbat**, followed by **Belgas . . . conitūrāre**; in chap. 4, **reperiēbat**, followed by **Belgas ortos esse**, in complete text.

**Iccius Rēmus**: *Iccius, a Remian.*

13. **sēse**: subject-accusative of **posse.**

#### PAGE 26,

19. **moenibus . . . mūrū . . . mūrus . . . mūrū**: Cæsar's haste in writing is often manifest.

20. **coepti sunt**: it may seem strange that the passive should be used instead of the active, **coepērunt**; but see 143, a; H. 297, 1.

22. **Quod**: how is a relative after a period often best rendered? For an example, see note on **qui**, chap. 1, l. 13, simplified text.

24. **nūlli**: mark the emphasis from the position. Many similar cases occur, notwithstanding A. & G., p. 389, Rem.  
**oppugnandi = oppugnātiōnis.**

25. **summa nōbilitāte et grātia**: a descriptive ablative; *a man of the highest rank and popularity.*

26. **præfuerat**: render as if an imperfect. The meaning is, he had been placed in command and was then in command.  
**ex his**: the same as **eōrum.**

27. **lēgāti**: *as envoys.* Compare the use of **obsides** as an appositive, p. 25, l. 26.

28. **submittātur**: can you make out the force of the **sub**?

#### CHAP. 7,

2. **subsidiō oppidānis**: *to aid the people in the town.* But what literally? For the construction, see 233, a; H. 390.

- line 3. **quōrum adventu** : *in consequence of their coming.*  
 5. **contendērunt** : the subject is **hostes**, suggested by **hostibus** in the preceding sentence.  
 6. **ab** : *distant, off, away* ; so used chiefly with numerals.  
**ab milibus passuum minus duobus** : a word for word rendering would be, *distant thousands of paces less than two* ; that is, *less than two miles distant*.

## PAGE 26,

3. **neque . . . cōgnōvit** : *and learned from those scouts whom he had sent and from the Remi that they were now not far distant.*  
 30. **isdem ducibus** : *the same persons as guides.* Compare **qui lēgātī**, p. 26, l. 27, and note on simplified text.

## PAGE 27,

3. **apud oppidum** : **ad** is more usual.  
 4. **agros . . . dēpopulāti** — **vicis aedificiisque . . . incēnsis** : literally, *having laid waste the fields — the villages and buildings having been burned.* Mark how the construction changes for want of a deponent verb in place of **incendo**.  
 9. **in lātitudinem** : compare **in altitudinem**, p. 26, l. 13.

## CHAP. 8,

2. **eximiam . . . virtūtis** : *their eminent reputation for valor.*  
 3. **quid virtūte posset** : *what their real eminence in valor was*  
     Compare **quid in bello possent**, chap. 4, l. 2.  
 7. **tantum . . . patēbat quantum loci** : render as if **loci** depended on **tantum** instead of **quantum**, *extended over as much space as.*  
**adversus** : *facing the enemy* ; **adversus** an adjective, agreeing with **collis**.  
**in lātitudinem** : *laterally.* Compare chap 7, l. 8.  
 8. **ex utrāque parte lateris** = **ex utrōque latere** : *on, not from, both sides* ; so **ab**, below, l. 10.  
 10. **ad plānitē redibat** : *gradually resumed (impf.) a level.* Cæsar describes a hill over against the enemy, having steep sides, and a front only broad enough for his army when arranged for battle. In front the hill rose with a gentle ascent, and at the top blended with the plain. It is possible that **lēniter fastigātus** means, as the dic-

tionaries define on this passage and as many editors say, *gently sloping down*; in which case, **ad plānitē redibat** would mean *sank down gradually to the level at its base*. This attributes an improbable meaning to **fastigātus**.

line 12. **extrēmas fossas**: *at the ends of the trenches*; compare in chap. 2, l. 2, **interiōrem Galliam**, *the interior of Gaul*.

**castella**: there were, then, four.

17. **ēductas instrūxerant**: to make good English, render as if **ēductas** were a verb followed by **et**; so, very often, when a perfect participle and verb are closely connected.

#### PAGE 27,

10. **et . . . et**: we do not say *both . . . and* so frequently as we find **et . . . et** in Latin; accordingly it will generally be found better to omit in translation the first **et**, and render the second *and also*.

11. **proelio . . . proeliis**: *a decisive battle . . . skirmishes*.

14. **loco**: ablative absolute, *as there was a place*.

21. **obdūxit**: Cæsar elsewhere commonly uses **perdūco** of running a wall or trench. Why **obdūco** here? Because the **fossae** were dug *against* the enemy, or to *cover his position*.

24. **cum . . . instrūxisset**: Cæsar's thought was, according to Latin idiom, *when I shall have drawn up*, **instrūxero**; but such a future perfect of direct speech becomes pluperfect subjunctive in narration, after a past tense in the principal clause.

24. **quod . . . poterant**: *because they were so strong in numbers*. Find two other similar uses of **possum**.

27. **si quo opus esset**: *if there should be need of them anywhere*; not, *if there should be need of any thing*.

28. **subsīdio**: in meaning and construction like **subsīdio**, p. 26, l. 32.

#### CHAP. 9,

2. **si . . . trānsīrent**: *to see if our men would cross this (hanc)*.

3. **contendēbātur**: *there was fighting*. Compare chap. 6, l. 3, **sustentātum est**.

4. **neutri**: *neither of the two armies*.

5. **secundiōre . . . nostris**: *as the cavalry skirmish proved rather favorable to our men*.



line 9. **castellum** : read over again the last half of chap. 5.

Cæsar makes no mention there of a **castellum**.

10. **potuissent** : the thought was, according to the Latin idiom, "if we shall not have been able" (**potuerimus**) ; but such a future perfect of direct speech becomes a pluperfect subjunctive in narration after a past tense.

#### PAGE 28,

1. **nostri autem**, etc. : a difficult sentence ; but treat it as directed in the Introductory Note, p. 43, only observing that **si** has its usual meaning of *if*, and **impeditos**, *when they should get stuck fast*, agrees with **hostes** understood.
2. **ut . . . adgrederentur** : expresses the purpose of **parāti in armis erant**.
9. **eo cōsilio** : *with this design* ; explained by **ut castellum . . . expūgnārent**.  
**possent** : they said to themselves, *if we shall be able*, **poterimus** ; but *if we shall not have succeeded*, **si minus potuerimus** ; hence **potuissent**, when related. See note on **instrūxisset**, p. 27, l. 24.
12. **nōbis ūsui** : compare **subsidio oppidānis**, p. 26, l. 32.

#### CHAP. 10,

3. **pūgnātum est** : contains its own subject, *there was fierce fighting*. See **contendēbātur**, chap. 9, l. 3, and note.
4. **impeditos** : *while they were struggling*.
6. **circumventos interfēcērunt** : *they surrounded and killed*.  
Read again the note on **ēductas instrūxerant**, chap. 8, l. 17.
7. **spem** : subject-accusative of **fefellisse** ; but translate, *that they were disappointed in the hope*.  
**neque** : take the negative part with **prōgredi**.
8. **ipsos** : that is, **se ipsos**, namely, **hostes**.
10. **quemque** : subject-accusative of **reverti**. See also note on chap. 4, l. 9.
11. **quōrum . . . ad eos** : you will very often find the relative clause preceding the antecedent. In almost all such cases the English way of speaking requires us to render the antecedent clause first.

- line 13. **Quod** : *this*, referring to the last two sentences.  
**eo cōnsilio** : *with this design*, explained by the following clause.
16. **His persuādēri** : depends on **nōn poterat**. Why did not Cæsar write, **Hi persuādēri . . . nōn poterant**, since he means, *these could not be persuaded*? 230 ; H. 301, 1.

## PAGE 28,

19. **reliquos . . . cōnantes** : *the rest . . . while they were trying*.
21. **Hostes** : subject of **cōstituērunt**, l. 25, while a pronoun referring to **hostes** may be mentally supplied as subject of **intellēxērunt** and **vidērunt**. This sentence illustrates an important principle of Latin order, attention to which will be of great aid in translation. When the verb of the principal clause and that of the dependent clause have the same subject, it is commonly expressed in the principal, and left out in the dependent. clause. In English we do the opposite. We often begin with the dependent clause ; the Latin *frames it into* the principal clause.
21. **ubi** : repeat mentally with **vidērunt** and **coepit**.
28. **ad eos dēfendendos** : illustrates a very common way of expressing a purpose.

## CHAP. 11,

1. **ea re** : that is, to disperse to their homes ; chap. 10, l. 10.
2. **āgressi** : the subject is **Belgae**, understood.
3. **cōnsimilis** : *altogether like*. What is the force of **con** ?
4. **Caesar** : as the subject of **veritus** and **continuit**, **Caesar** seems strangely placed in the grip of the ablative absolute ; but the position shows by whom the knowledge was got. *Caesar getting wind of this movement immediately through his spies*.
5. **veritus** : try always to render a participle so as to show its logical relation to the main verb, whether of time, cause, contrast, or what not ; here, *because he feared*.  
**castris** : substantially equivalent to **in castris**.
6. **qui . . . morārētur** : compare **qui dēdūceret**, chap. 2, l. 3, and note.

- line 10. **ventum erat**: *they had come*. Compare **sustentatum est**, chap. 6, l. 3; **contendebatur**, chap. 9, l. 3.  
 11. **priores**: *those in advance*.  
 15. **sub**: *towards*. The idea of *place* being transferred to that of *time*.

## PAGE 29,

5. **quisque**: see p. 25, l. 3, and note on simplified text.  
**primum itineris locum**: *the first place on the road*.  
 8. **qua . . . discēderent**: following **quod . . . perspēxerat**.  
 16. **cum . . . cōsisterent**: *since the enemy, at the very extremity of the rear, kept making a stand*.  
 18. **priores et** understood; *while those in advance*.  
**quod**: carry on also into the next clause; *and because they were not held together (continērentur)*.  
 21. **sine illo periculo**: two ways of expressing "without any" in this chapter; for above we have **nullo certo ordine**, *without any definite order*.  
 23. **quantum . . . spatium**: *how great a space of time (dīsi) there was*; that is (they killed as great a number) *as the length of the time allowed*.  
 24. **sēque in castra . . . recēperunt**: and they and their pitiless commander probably slept well that night.

## CHAP. 12,

3. **ex itinere**: see chap. 6, l. 2, and note.  
**oppugnāre**: means here *carry by assault*.  
 5. **omnis . . . multitudo**: notice that an adjective and a noun are often separated by words depending on the noun. Here **ex fuga** from the position is almost equivalent to **fugientium**.  
 6. **vīneis**: wooden frames with sloping roof and covered with hides, to protect a number of besiegers.  
 7. **actis**: from **ago**, *brought up*; the **vīneae** were often moved on wheels.  
**aggere iacto**: *when earth had been thrown up for a mound*. This was done so that wooden towers could be brought up near the walls.  
 10. **ut cōservārentur**: mark how often a dependent clause precedes the one on which it depends. Attention to this

will often help in unravelling a long sentence. Now see **qui . . . dēdūceret**, chap. 2, l. 3; **quid . . . posset et . . . auderent**, chap. 8, ll. 3, 4; **qui . . . morārētur**, chap. 11, l. 6.

## PAGE 29,

line 32. **paucis dēfendentibus** : *though the defenders were few.*

## PAGE 30,

1. **Castris mūnītis** : *after making a fortified camp.* The first and most important thing, after selecting the site of a camp, was to intrench it. That may be all that is meant in this instance.

**vīneas agere** : depends on **coepit**.

**quaeque . . . comparāre** : *and to get ready whatever.*

2. **ūsui** : compare **subsīdio**, p. 26, l. 32.

5. **quae** : *the like of which.*

## CHAP. 13,

1. **obsīdibus acceptis** : *after receiving hostages.*  
**armis . . . trādītis** : it was Cæsar's practice to disarm his conquered enemies.
3. **Qui cum** : the relative is in the right place in Latin, but we cannot translate in this order. The natural place for both words is at the beginning of a clause; but when they come together, the relative takes precedence.
5. **circiter . . . quīnque** : *only about five miles.*
6. **abesset** : governed by **cum**.  
**māiōres nātu** : *elders*; **seniōres** would not do.
7. **sēse . . . venīre** : *they surrendered to him unconditionally.*
9. **pueri** : *children*, as **homīnes** often means *men and women*.

## PAGE 30,

9. **atque** : *and besides*, or *and in particular*.
17. **neque . . . contendere** : *and that they were not in arms.*
20. **passis manibus** : *pitiful* !

## CHAP. 14,

1. **facit verba** : *intercedes.*
2. **in fide . . . fuērunt** : *have been faithful and friendly.*
4. **perferre** : *were enduring.* For the tense, see 336, A.

- line 5. **ſiue cōſilli principes** : *the prime movers in this plan* : **principes** = **auctōres**, *authors*.
6. **in Britanniam profūgērunt** : as lately Boulanger and others have done.
8. **clēmēntia** : said of one who has power to exercise the opposite, **ſevēritas**, **crūdēlitas**.  
**mānsuētūdine** : said of one who is humane and gentle, opposed to **feritas**.
9. **fēceris . . . amplificābis** : we say, 'if you do this, you will add to'; in Latin, 'if you shall have done this, you will add to.'
10. **qua** : 105, d. ; H. 190, 1.  
**ſi qua bella**, etc. : *by whose aid and resources they (the Ædui) are accustomed to bear the burden of whatever wars befall them*.

## PAGE 30,

26. **perferre . . . dēfēcisse** : *were enduring . . . had revolted*.
28. **quod intellegent** : *seeing*.
31. **sua** : emphatic ; *his own*, that is, *his well-known*.
32. **quod ſi fēcerit** : *if he should do this* ; the subjunctive of the future perfect, for which there is no separate form ; hence the form of the perfect subjunctive is borrowed. If the tense is named by its form, it will be called *perfect subjunctive* ; if by its meaning, *future perfect subjunctive*.

## PAGE 31,

1. **amplificātūrum (eſſe)** : the subject must be inferred from the subject of **fēcerit**.

## CHAP. 15,

1. **honoris . . . cauſa** : *out of regard to Divitiacus*.
3. **māgna . . . auctōritāte** : *one of great influence* ; a predicate ablative of description ; such an ablative must always have a modifier, as here, **māgna**. The genitive may be used in the same way, as below, **māgnæ virtūtis**. On the order, see note, chap. 12, l. 5.
6. **quōrum**, etc. : translate closely in the order of the Latin ; *about their character and customs, Cæsar, on inquiry* ; so, generally, do your best to keep close to the Latin order. Read again the Introductory Note, p. 43.

- line 12. **qui . . . dēdidissent**: *for having surrendered*; what would be the meaning of **qui . . . dēdiderant**?

## PAGE 31,

6. **hominum . . . praestābat**: *was the most populous*; what is it literally?
12. **patī**: *that they permitted*. Supply **eos**, referring to **Nervii**, as the subject of **patī**, **esse**, **inreplitāre**, and **cōnfirmāre**.
13. **quod . . . existimārent**: observe in the simplified text **quod . . . existimābant**; why the difference?
16. **qui . . . dēdisent . . . prōiēcissent**: *for having surrendered and renounced*; literally, *since they had surrendered*.
17. **sēse**: subject-accusative of **missūros**.

## CHAP. 16,

1. **trīdium**: *for three days*, accusative of duration.
2. **Sabim**: now called the Sambre.
6. **quique**: equivalent to **et eos qui**, and all such as.  
**per aetātem**: *by reason of their age*; that is, whether too old or too young.
7. **in eum locum . . . quo**: *into a place to which*. The idea of the Latin fully expressed would be, *into a place of such a character (eum) that to it (quo) there would be no access for an army*. 319, 2 and note; II. 500, I. Compare **qui . . . vidērentur**, immediately preceding.
8. **exercitui**: *for an army*, not necessarily, *for Caesar's army*.

## PAGE 31,

19. **Cum . . . fēcisset**: a temporal **cum** clause is not always best rendered by *when*, etc.: *after marching for three days*.
24. **hīs . . . persuāserant**: observe on p. 29, l. 1, an example of the impersonal construction of **persuādeo** in the passive: **hīs persuādēri . . . nōn poterat**, *it was not possible for these to be persuaded*.
27. **cōnīēcisse**: the verb implies hurried action, and so differs from **dēpōno**, which **Cæsar** uses in Book IV., 19, of putting women and children in a place of safety.

## CHAP. 17,

line 2. **qui . . . dēligant**: compare **qui dēdūceret**, chap. 2, l. 3, and note; **qui . . . morārētur**, chap. 11, l. 6.

**Cum**: *since*. See note on chap. 6, l. 8.

5. **dēmōnstrārunt**: shortened from **dēmōnstrāvērunt**, 128, a, 1; H. 235.

**inter singulas**: *between each two*; the same mistake, "between each," is common in English.

6. **neque . . . negōti**: *and it was a matter of no difficulty at all*.

7. **cum . . . vēnisset**: *when the first legion should reach the camping ground*. In the direct form, **vēnerit**, *shall have reached*; then regularly such a future perfect is changed to the pluperfect subjunctive in indirect discourse after a past tense. See note on chap 9, l. 10.

8. **sarcinis**: "Besides his arms, the Roman soldier carried stakes (**vālli**), used for the palisades of the camp, food and utensils, a saw, a spade, a chain for his prisoners, and other things. He was loaded like a mule."—LONG.

**qua pulsa**: *if this legion were beaten*.

**futūrum (esse)**: depends on **dēmōnstrārunt**; *the result would be*.

9. **Nervii autem**: *now the Nervii*. **Nervii** is the subject of **effēcerant**. This long sentence is not so difficult as it at first seems. Follow closely the Latin order to discover the sense, render **quo in order that**, **effēcerant had caused**, and **instar like**.

11. **teneris . . . ēnātis**: *by lopping the trees when young, and intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction*; **ēnātis** from **ēnāscor**.

12. **interiectis**: it does not appear possible to take this word in the sense given to it in the dictionaries, *thrown or stuffed in*. So Moberly translates, "by throwing in brambles and thorns for the present occasion." But is it to be supposed that this was done everywhere? If not, how would the Nervii know where to do it? Moreover, what they had done was done **antiquitus**, *from of old*. Translate, therefore, *by planting among them*.

line 14. **quo nōn modo nōn . . . sed ne . . . quidem**: this formula, or (without the second **nōn**) **nōn modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem**, is usually awkwardly rendered, *not only not, but not even*. Instead, translate as if the first member were complete in itself (suppressing **modo**), followed by *nay, nor even*, thus: *which it was not possible to pass through, nay, nor even see through*.

15. **Hīs rēbus**: *by these obstacles*.

16. **nōn . . . cōnsilium**: *they ought not to disregard the advice*.

#### PAGE 32,

4. **impedimentōrum**: here, *baggage animals*; **impedimentis**, below, *baggage*.

9. **Adiuvābat**: the subject is the long sentence following, **Nervii . . . effecerant**. Translate, *this circumstance favored the advice of those who reported the intelligence, that (quod)*.

10. **nihil . . . posset**: compare **quid in bello posset**, p. 24, l. 25; **quid virtūte posset**, p. 27, l. 12.

11. **neque enim**: *and in fact . . . not*. Observe that **enim** here does not mean *for*.

12. **pedestribus valent cōplis**: compare **virtūte . . . valēre**, p. 25, l. 5. The ablative is ablative of means.

13. **ad eos**: that is, the Nervii.

#### CHAP. 18,

1. **quem locum**: *I mean the place which*.

3. **Ab eo flumine**: that is, on the other side.

4. **pari adclivitate collis**: *a hill of similar upward slope*; a descriptive ablative.

**ab superiōre parte**: *in the upper part*. **Ab** not seldom means *on, in, at, by*, because the idea of removal (*from*) implies previous contact or nearness, and the latent idea is sometimes the most important.

5. **ut**: may be considered as referring to an **ita** suppressed with **silvestris**; *so thickly wooded that*.

**nōn . . . posset**: *one could not easily see within*. Impersonal expressions, like **perspici potest**, are common in Latin. Mark the mode of translation.

7. **secundum**: *along, properly following, from sequor*.



## PAGE 32,

line 24. **adversus huic et contrarius**: *corresponding to this and right opposite.*

25. **passus . . . apertus**: *clear of woods for about two hundred paces up from its base.*

**infimus**: *ab inferiōre parte.*

## CHAP. 19,

1. **omnibus cōpiis**: Cæsar often uses **cum omnibus cōpiis**.

2. **cōnsuetūdine**: *according to custom*; just as frequently **ex cōnsuetūdine**.

4. **conlocārat**: for **conlocāverat**. See **dēmōnstrāvunt**, chap. 17, l. 5, and note.

6. **praesidiōque impedimentis**: compare **subsidiō oppidānis**, chap. 7, l. 2, and note.

11. **opere dīmēnsio**: *after laying out the work*; the expression refers to marking off the ground preparatory to trenching, making a rampart, etc.

**castra mūnīre**: *to make a camp.*

17. **in manibus nostris**: *close upon us.*

18. **ad**: *towards*; repeat it mentally before **eos**.

**adverso colle**: *straight up the hill*; literally, *with the hill before them*; so perhaps strictly neither an ablative absolute nor an ablative of the "way by which."

## • PAGE 32,

32. **ratio ōrdōque āgminis**: *the plan and the order of marching.*  
**aliter . . . āc**: *otherwise than, different from what*; this strange idiom looks like an abridged, colloquial expression; probably it was, fully expressed, **aliter āc aliter**, *one way and another way*. The order of march was one way and the Belgæ had reported it another way. So I have heard a child say, "This is different and that is different," meaning "this is different from that."

## PAGE 33,

8. **cum**: *while*; to be repeated mentally with **facient**.

10. **neque . . . cōdentes Insequi audērent**: *and while our men were hesitating to pursue them when they retreated.*

**quem ad finem**: translate as if it were **ad finem ad quem**, *to the line to which the level, clear ground extended.*

line 15. **ut . . . cōfirmāverant** : *as they had arranged their order of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do.*

## CHAP. 20,

2. **signum tuba dandum (erat)** : in order to call the men to take their places in the ranks. Some might not see the flag.
3. **signum dandum** : this time the signal is for the charge, or perhaps to get ready for a charge.
5. **subsīdio** : dative of end or service, but render as if a nominative, which might have been used, *a help*.
7. **commode** : modifies **praescribere**.  
**ipsi sibi praescribere . . . poterant** : they could direct themselves without any orders (**ipsi**).
11. **nihil** : not . . . at all ; stronger than **nōn**.
12. **per se** : on their own responsibility.  
**quae vidēbantur** : whatever seemed best.

## PAGE 33,

27. **qui** : does not refer to **mīlites**, but to **ii** understood.  
**aggeris petendi causa** : for the purpose of seeking materials for a rampart. Mark the position of **causa**, always following the genitive depending on it.
30. **his difficultātibus** : in this strait ; but the words are in the dative with **subsīdio**. Find two other instances of this construction of two datives.
32. **quid fieri oportēret** : the object of **praescribere**.

## CHAP. 21,

1. **necessāriis rēbus imperātis** : when you meet with **res**, ask yourself exactly what it means, and then find a proper rendering. Translate, *after giving the necessary orders*.
4. **prīstinae** : this word is often used of what was formerly and still continues.  
**neu . . . animo** : and not lose presence of mind.
6. **quod . . . aberant** : gives the reason of the following, not the preceding, clause.
8. **pūgnantibus occurrit** : he finds them fighting.

- line 8. **Temporis**: mark how the important word comes first. Take this sentence in thought almost without change in the order of the words, then translate.

**tanta . . . exiguitas**: *so great was the littleness = such was the shortness. Translate, so short was the time.*

10. **insignia**: "the crests, feathers red and black, and other decorations which the soldiers had. . . . On the march the helmet was not carried on the head. The shields had leather coverings when they were not in use." — LONG.
12. **Quam . . . dēvenit**: *to whatever part of the army each one happened to come.*  
**ab opere**: that is, making the camp; see chap. 19, l. 11.
13. **quaeque . . . cōspēxit**: *and whatever standards he caught sight of first.*

PAGE 34,

13. **quo . . . posset**: *whither a javelin could be hurled = a javelin throw.*
19. **Quam . . . in partem**: compare the second line of the chapter. **quisque** seems oddly placed, but it is crowded out of the first place, where it would like to stand, by **quam**.

CHAP. 22,

2. **rei militāris . . . ōrdo**: *military science and arrangement.*
3. **fiēbat**: *the result was.*  
**aliae . . . parte**: in this idiom the second part only of the thought is expressed. 'Other legions were fighting in another part' implies 'some were fighting in one part of the field.'  
**So claudus altero pede**, lame in the other foot, implies one foot sound.
5. **interiectis**: to be taken with **saepibus**.
6. **ut**: *so that.* **conlocāri**: depends on **possent**.
7. **in**: *of reason, because of or owing to.*
8. **iniquitāte**: usually translated *unfavorable condition*, or by some similar phrase, and such is the common meaning of **iniquitas**; but the context shows that the meaning here is closer to the original sense, that of *unevenness*; hence we may translate, *owing to such inequality in the condition of things.*

## PAGE 34,

line 25. **cum** : *since*, governs **impedīrētur** as well as **resisterent**.  
**dīversis legiōnibus** : **dīversus** means *turned different ways, not with united line* ; hence here, *disjoined*. Translate, *since, owing to the legions being separated*.

28. **neque certa subsidia** : here begins the statement of the result ; **certa subsidia** : subject of **poterant**.

**neque quid**, etc. : *nor was it possible to foresee what was needed everywhere*. After **prōvidēri** supply mentally **poterat**, of which the whole preceding clause is the grammatical subject.

## CHAP. 23,

1. **ut** : *since*. Would the mode of **cōnstitērant** have been the same, if **cum** had been used in place of **ut** ?

2. **acie** : an old form of the genitive for **aciēi**.

**Atrebates** : object of **compulērunt**.

6. **Ipsi** : refers to the subject of **interfēcērunt** ; that is, **legiōnis nōnae et decimae milites**.

8. **dīversae** = **aliae** ; what should it mean from its derivation ?

10. **a frōnte** : *along the front*. See chap. 18, l. 4, and note.

11. **ab sinistra parte** : *on the left*. Compare **ā frōnte**, preceding line, and **ab superiōre parte**, chap. 18, l. 4, and note.

**nūdātis castris** : *as the camp was left unguarded*.

13. **aperto latere** : *on their (the legions') exposed flank*.

14. **summum . . . locum** : *the summit occupied by the camp* ; **castrōrum** is a possessive genitive.

## PAGE 35,

3. **exanimātos . . . cōnfectos** : *breathless and exhausted by wounds*.

**hīs** : the ninth and tenth legions.

4. **ea pars** : that is, **ea pars hostium**.

5. **cōnantes** : accusative, agreeing with **Atrebates** understood, or a pronoun referring to **Atrebates**.

8. **resistentes hostes** : object of **cōniēcērunt**.

16. **summam imperi** : *chief command*.

## CHAP. 24,

2. **cum . . . recipere** : *as they were returning*.

5. **cum respēxissent** : *on looking back*. A **cum** clause is not always best translated by a full clause.

- line 6. **praecipites . . . mandābant**: *ran away as fast as they could*. What literally?
7. **eōrum**: depends on **clāmor fremitusque**.
8. **ferēbantur**: *began to rush*. Observe the imperfects followed by perfects. The imperfect paints, the perfect describes.
10. **auxili causa**: *for the purpose of rendering aid = as auxiliaries*.
11. **cum**: *since*. See note, chap. 6, l. 8.  
**complēri**: this and the following infinitives depend on **vīdissent**.
13. **vīdissent**: the subject is **equites Trēveri**.
14. **rēbus**: *fortunes*. How might a clause be substituted here in Latin for the ablative absolute?
15. **pulsos superātōsque**: supply **esse**.

## PAGE 35,

21. **pulsos**: supply **esse**.
22. **adversis hostibus occurrēbant**: *came straight against the enemy*. What literally?
23. **cālōnes . . . āc summo iugo**: the **porta decumāna** was the rear gate of the camp, opposite the **porta praetōria**. It appears from this passage that the place for the **cālōnes** was at the back of the camp, and that in this instance the camp was partly on sloping ground.
30. **virtūtis opīnio**: *reputation for valor*.

## PAGE 36,

2. **dīversos dissipātōsque**: *running in different directions and scattered*.
5. **hostes**: subject-accusative of **potītōs (esse)**.

## CHAP. 25,

2. **suos urgēri**: *that his men were hard pressed*; the infinitive depends on **vīdit**.
3. **cōnfertos mīlites**: *that the soldiers by being crowded together*.  
**sibi . . . impedimento**: *hindered one another*.
8. **ut . . . posset**: *so that he could no longer stand*.
9. **Hīs rēbus**: *for these reasons*.  
**tardiōres**: *were losing heart*.
12. **subeuntes intermittere**: *cease mounting the hill*.

- line 12. **ab utrōque latere**: *on both flanks*. Compare **ab superiōre parte**, chap. 18, l. 4.
13. **rem . . . angusto**: *that the situation was critical*. What literally?
14. **ūni**: a peculiar use of **ūnus**, quite equivalent to *a*; not to be imitated in writing Latin.
17. **signa . . . iussit**: *he ordered them to advance and at the same time to open out their ranks*.

## PAGE 36,

7. **Caesar**: subject of **prōcessit**, fifteen lines below. This first sentence extending through eighteen lines looks very formidable; but if it is taken in accordance with the Introductory Note, p. 43, the meaning will be evident. To translate the sentence is more difficult. In translating, repeat "*and saw*" before the words **quartae cohortis**, and render the ablative absolutes by clauses, thus: *and saw that all the captains of the fourth cohort were killed*. Then, **reliquos esse tardiōres**, *that the rest (in consequence) were losing heart*.
8. **signisque . . . conlātis**: *and since the standards were brought together*. Try constantly to make out the relation in thought expressed by participles; that is, whether the idea is that of time, *when, while*, etc.; of cause, *as, since*; of concession, *though, notwithstanding*; or of condition, accompanying circumstances, etc., to be variously rendered.
16. **ab novissimis**: *in the rear*. So below, l. 21. Compare **ab sinistra parte**, p. 23, l. 13. In both places in this chapter it would be easy to make the mistake of taking **ab** in the sense of **ex**, as a substitute for the partitive genitive.
27. **operam nāvare cuperet**: "*wished to do his best*." What literally?

## CHAP. 26,

3. **ut . . . coniungerent**: *for the legions gradually to draw together*.
7. **proelio nūtiātō**: *on the report of the battle*.  
**cursu incitātō**: *quickening their speed*. The participle following is causal; they began to run because of the report of the battle.

line 10. **qui**: refers to **decimam legiōnem**. What is the grammatical irregularity, and how is it to be accounted for?  
**cum**: to be taken with **cōgnōvissent**.

**quo in loco res esset**: *what the situation was*. What literally? Account for the subjunctive.

12. **nihil . . . fēcērunt**: *left nothing undone in the way of speed*.  
 What literally?

**reliqui**: neuter of **reliquus**. A partitive genitive depending on **nihil**. Find a similar construction in chap. 15.

#### PAGE 36,

31. **conversa signa**: the object of **inferrent**, but most conveniently rendered as coördinate with it, *to face about and charge*. It is thought that by this movement the twelfth and the seventh legions formed a circle or a square.

#### PAGE 37,

1. **neque timērent**: repeat **cum** mentally from the preceding clause; *and since they* (no longer) *feared*.

**aversi**: literally, *being turned away*; translate, *from their rear being unguarded*.

#### CHAP. 27,

2. **vulneribus cōfecti**: *badly wounded*. What literally?  
**prōcubuissent**: from **prōcumbo**.

3. **vēro**: emphasizes **equites**, but is better left untranslated; say, *while the cavalry*.

4. **se . . . praeferrent**: *thrust themselves before*; a result clause, dependent on **tanta . . . est facta**.

5. **in extrēma spe salūtis**: "*when all hope of saving themselves was at an end*." Here a literal translation would be meaningless or misleading.

7. **proximi . . . insistēbant**: *those nearest would stand upon their prostrate companions*.

8. **his dēlectis**: *when these* (in turn) *were thrown down*.

10. **intercepta remittēbant**: *would catch and hurl back*. See **ēductas instrūxerant**, chap. 8, l. 17, and note.

11. **ut**, etc.: *so that one ought to judge that it was not without cause that men of such valor*. On **iudicāre dēbēret**, compare **perspici posset**, chap. 18, l. 5, and note.

- line 13. **quae . . . difficillimis** : *things which, most difficult in themselves.*  
**facilia** : a predicate adjective with **redēgerat**.

## PAGE 37,

15. **innixi** : from **innitor**, agrees with **nostri**.  
**perterritos** : supply **esse** ; the subject-accusative is **hostes**.  
 16. **inermes** : agrees with **cālōnes**, *even though unarmed*.  
 23. **qui superessent** : *the survivors*. Supply **fi** as antecedent of **qui**.  
**ut** : *as*. So used p. 34, l. 23.  
 24. **cōnicerent** : dependent on **tantam virtutem . . . ut** ; (so that) *those who survived (qui superessent) kept hurling*.

## \* CHAP. 28,

1. **prope** : modifies **ad**, not **redācto**.  
 2. **redācto** : see the last word of the preceding chapter.  
**māiores nātū** : see chap. 13, l. 6, and note.  
 3. **pueris** : see chap. 13, l. 9, and note.  
 4. **cōnsēnsu . . . supererant** : *with the consent of all the survivors*.  
 7. **vix ad** : *to barely* ; for **ad vix**, as some say.  
 8. **in** : *towards* ; **erga** might have been used.  
 9. **vidērētur** : *not that he might seem, but that he might be seen*.  
 11. **se . . . prohibērent** : *refrain and keep their dependents from* ;  
**prohibēre** is appropriate to **suos**, but hardly to **se**.

## PAGE 37,

31. **aestuāria** : "the country lying to the north (the modern Zealand) is low and marshy, cut up with tidewater inlets and bays." — ALLEN & GREENOUGH.  
 32. **cum victōribus**, etc. : *since they thought there was no obstacle for the victors, no safety for the vanquished*.

## PAGE 38,

4. **mīlibus LX.** : they had promised fifty thousand ; see chap. 4.  
 It was natural that they should exaggerate their losses.

## CHAP. 29,

1. **auxilio Nervii** : compare **subsīdio oppidānis**, chap. 7, l. 2, and note. Find other examples of this construction.  
 4. **ūnum oppidum** : supposed to be at the junction of the Sambre and Meuse.  
 5. **ex omnibus in circuitu partibus** : simply, *all round*.



line 9. **conlocābant** : there is a reading, **conlocārant**. If that is the true reading, **tum** in the preceding line would mean *besides*.

## PAGE 38,

10. **cum** : *while*. Four lines below **cum** means *though*.
16. **aditus . . . pedum** : *an approach of two hundred feet in breadth, not more*; **pedum** depends on **aditus**.
21. **his impedimentis** : take with **dēpositis**, two lines below.
22. **agere ac portāre** : *drive or carry*.
24. **ūna** : *with it*; that is, the plunder.
25. **cum alias**, etc. : *since they carried on now aggressive now defensive war*. What literally?

## CHAP. 30,

1. **primo adventu = cum primum advēnisset**, *as soon as our army had got there*.
3. **pedum XII** : that is, **in altitudinem**, which is expressed, chap. 5, l. 19.
4. **oppido** : might have been **in oppido**. Cf. **castris**, chap. 11, l. 5.
5. **vīneis āctis** : **āctis** from **ago**; see chap. 12, l. 6, and note. **aggere exstructo** : an embankment of timber, stones, and earth was begun at a distance from the walls of a town, wide enough to roll one or more towers upon, and was carried forward by soldiers working under the shelter of the **vīneae** up to the defensive works.
6. **cōstitui** : *being raised*.
7. **ab tanto spatio** : *so far away*. Compare **ab milibus**, chap. 7, l. 6, and note.
8. **quibusnam manibus** : *with what hands, pray*; **nam** added for emphasis, to point their sarcasm.
10. **conlocāre** : strangely used for **conlocātūros (esse)**. The Aduatuci may have thought that the Romans intended to hoist the tower upon their wall, or they may have been joking. Which is more likely?

## PAGE 39,

5. **hominibus . . . contemptui** : another pair of datives. Find other examples. The Italians of the present time do not strike one as conspicuously shorter than the Germans.

line 5. **māgnitūdine**: being contrasted with **brevitas**, is used in the sense of **altitūdine**.

# CHAP. 31,

1. **movēri**: *moving*. This word here has suggested a change of **conlocāre**, in the last line of the preceding chapter, to **mōtūros**, a very plausible conjecture, but it spoils the joke of the Aduatuci.
5. **qui**: *since they*. Compare **qui . . . dēdidissent**, chap. 15, l. 12, and note.
8. **pro sua clēmētia**: *according to his well-known clemency*. See chap. 14, l. 8, and note. What did they think of his clemency when he sold 53,000 of them into slavery?
11. **trādītis armis** = **si arma trādīdissent**, *if they should surrender their arms*.
13. **per cruciātum interfici**: *to be tortured to death*. What literally?

# PAGE 39,

16. **statuisset**: *not had decided, but should decide*. No mistake is oftener made by beginners than in the rendering of a pluperfect subjunctive of indirect discourse representing a future perfect of direct discourse. Such a subjunctive is to be rendered by the auxiliary *should*, not *had*. To tell whether a pluperfect subjunctive represents a future perfect, think what form a speaker's words would take, remembering that the Romans commonly used the future or future perfect of things really future, while we very often use the present.

# CHAP. 32,

1. **cōnsuētūdine**: ablative of cause.
3. **aries**: "a long, strong beam of wood, furnished with an iron head in the form of a ram's head. It was suspended from a framework by a strong chain or ropes, and worked by men, who drove it against the wall." — LONG.
4. **in Nervii**: *in the case of the Nervii*; a common meaning of **in** with names of persons.
5. **ne quam . . . Inferant**: *not to do any harm to those who had surrendered to the Roman people*.

- line 7 **facere**: one would expect the future with subject-accusative, **se factūros (esse)**. Compare **conlocāre**, for **conlocātūros esse**, chap. 30, l. 10.
9. **prope . . . adaequārent**: *came up almost to the very top*; **summam** with **altitudinem**. What literally?
12. **pāce sunt ūsi** = **conquīēvērunt**, *kept quiet*.

## CHAP. 33,

3. **nostros**: *our commanders*, subject-accusative of **dēductūros** and **servātūros (esse)**.  
**praesidia**: men stationed in the **castella**; see below.
4. **dēductūros . . . servātūros**: observe how frequently **esse** is omitted with the future participle.  
**dēnique**: *at any rate*. What is its usual meaning?
5. **tertia vigilia**: the Romans divided the night into four equal divisions, watches, of about three hours each.
9. **eo concursum est**: *the soldiers hurried thither*. What literally? Find similar constructions in chaps. 6, 9, 10, 11.
10. **in extrēma spe salutis**: compare chap. 27, l. 5, and note. The context shows, however, that the meaning is not quite the same here. Translate, *as their last chance of saving themselves*.
14. **nēmo**: observe the emphasis from its position. Compare in English, "Silver and gold have I none." **nēmo** and **nūllus** are often so placed. Cf. **nūlli**, chap. 6, l. 10.
16. **ab iis qui ēmerant** = **ab ēmptōribus**: *by the purchasers*, who were the **mercātōres**, traders who followed the army as hungry sharks follow a ship.  
**capitum**: we say "souls." It depends on **quīnquāginta trium**.
17. **quīnquāginta trium**: 53,000 captives, probably chained in gangs and sent to be sold in the Province and in Italy; a source of great gain to the general.

## PAGE 40,

4. **mīlites . . . mīlītibus**: another evidence of haste. See p. 26, l. 19, and note.
5. **ne quam . . . ipiūriam**: see p. 39, l. 28, and note.
9. **iis**: with **armis**. Observe the order of the words.

line 10. **vīminibus intextis**: repeat mentally **ex** before these words. Some supply **factis**.

16. **pūgnātumque**, etc.: translate as if **hostibus** and **viris** were subjects.

17. **ut . . . dēbuit**: *as brave men ought to fight*. What literally?

18. **iacerent**: the subjunctive shows that the remark is a general one. The indicative would have a limiting force. The difference can hardly be brought out in translation. In the former case we may render, *against men who could throw*; in the latter, *against those who were throwing*.

20. **ad = circiter**.

#### CHAP. 34,

2. **miserat**: *had sent*, that is, before the defeat of the Aduatuci.

5. **diciōnem**: *under the sway*; in some texts, **in dēditiōnem**. If that reading is correct, the meaning would be, *were brought to surrender*.

#### CHAP. 35,

1. **pācāta**: see p. 23, l. 7, and note.

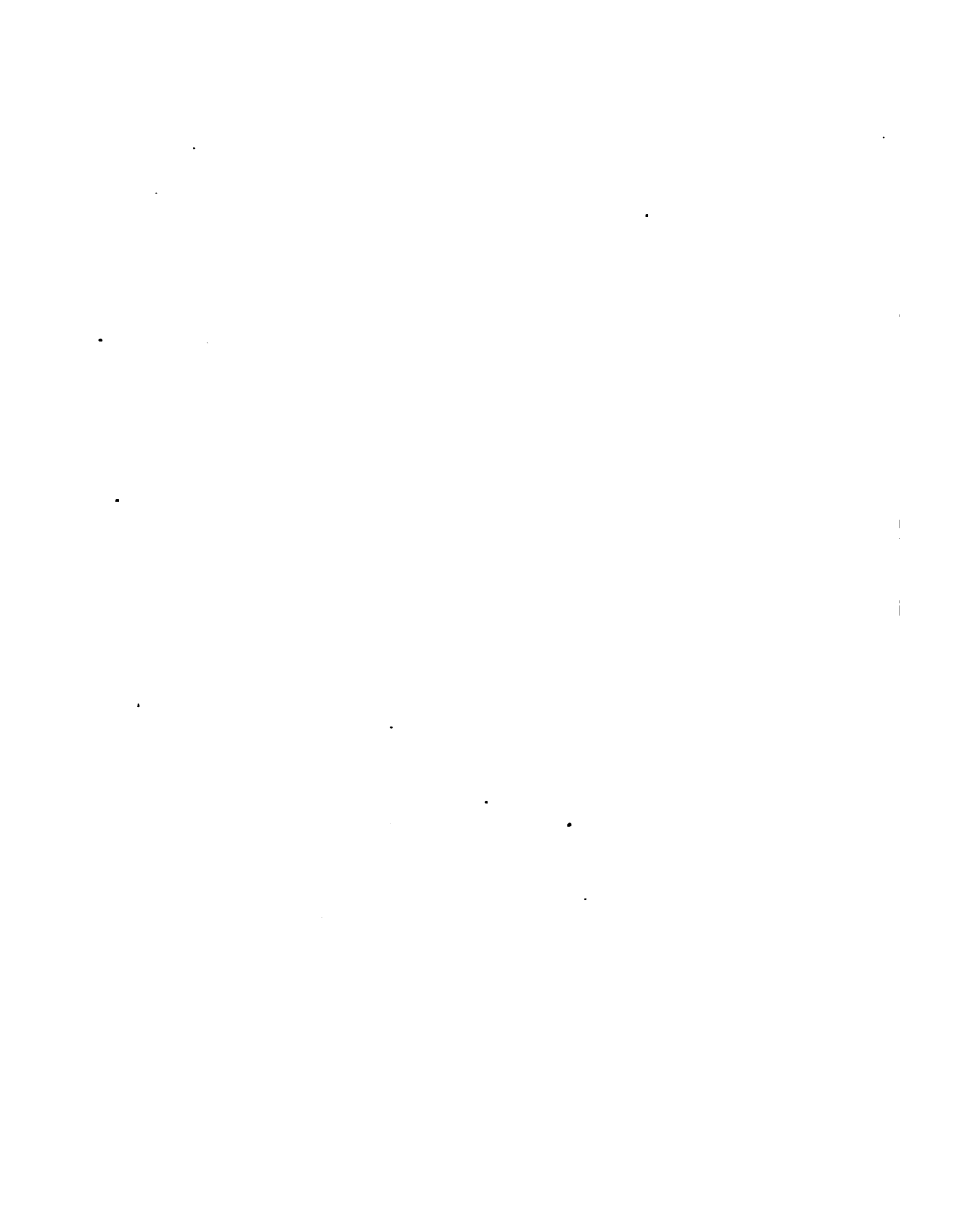
4. **qui . . . pollicērentur**: compare p. 23, l. 19, **qui . . . dēdūceret**; p. 29, l. 12, **qui . . . morārētur**; p. 31, l. 30, **qui . . . dēligant**.

6. **inīta proxima aestāte**: see p. 23, l. 18, and note.

10. **ex litteris**: *in consequence of the letters*.

11. **supplicatio**: a public, religious festival of thanksgiving, decreed by the senate. "The fifteen days' rejoicing marks the constant fear of the Gauls which had haunted the Romans ever since the 'dies Alliensis.' Kraner remarks that the longest 'supplicatio' till this had been one of twelve days, for Pompeius' success against Mithridates." — MOBERLY.

**nūlli**: see p. 40, l. 22; also p. 26, l. 24, and note.



## EXERCISES ON SIMPLIFIED TEX'

The references are to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, and Harkness.  
The learner is expected, before writing the Exercises, to review the Latin text, and find therein and commit to memory illustrations of the grammatical principles selected.

### CHAPTER I.

1. Indirect Discourse: 336, 1 and 2; H. 523 and I.
2. *Cum* Temporal with Subjunctive: 325; H. 521, II. and 2.
3. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing: 331, f.; H. 498, III.
1. Cæsar was in hither Gaul.
2. Reports were brought into hither Gaul.
3. While Labienus was in Gaul, the Belgæ made a league.<sup>1</sup>
4. A report is brought that<sup>2</sup> the Belgæ are conspiring.
5. They are afraid that our army is coming<sup>3</sup> against them.
6. They are vexed<sup>4</sup> that our army remains in Gaul.
7. Cæsar feared that the Belgæ were conspiring.
8. Letters kept coming,<sup>5</sup> while they were conspiring.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> made a league: one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> Be careful about the *that* clause in this and the following sentence. Recall the text to memory and mentally apply the rules. <sup>3</sup> is coming: use *venio*. <sup>4</sup> are vexed: in Latin one of the expressions, like *rūmōres adferēbantur*, requiring the accusative and infinitive. <sup>5</sup> kept coming: one word in Latin.

### CHAPTER II.

1. Relative Clauses of Purpose: 317, 2 and N.; H. 497, I.
2. Accus. and Infin. of Indirect Discourse: 336, 1 and 2; H. 523 and I.
1. In hither Gaul there<sup>1</sup> were two legions.
2. Two new legions Cæsar levies.

3. The two new legions are sent into the interior of Gaul.
4. Cæsar sends his lieutenant to lead <sup>2</sup> them.<sup>3</sup>
5. Pedius was sent to lead the new legions.
6. The Senones report that the Belgians are gathering.<sup>4</sup>
7. The Senones informed Cæsar about the Belgians.

NOTES. —<sup>1</sup> there : omit. <sup>2</sup> to lead : do not express a purpose in Latin by the infinitive. <sup>3</sup> them : *eas*. <sup>4</sup> are gathering : a passive form in Latin, because the sense is, *are being collected together*.

### CHAPTER III.

- (1. Ablative of Means : 248, 8, c ; H. 420.
2. Ablative with *potior*, *utior*, etc. : 249 ; H. 421, I.
3. Accus. and Infin. of Indirect Discourse : 336, 2 ; H. 523, I.
1. Cæsar came unexpectedly to the borders of the Remi.
2. The Remi said they had not combined<sup>1</sup> against the Roman people.
3. They said they were ready to give hostages.
4. All the rest of the Belgæ<sup>2</sup> had joined<sup>3</sup> with the Germans.
5. They aided Cæsar with corn and other<sup>4</sup> things.
6. The Remi and their<sup>5</sup> kinsmen enjoy the same laws.

NOTES. —<sup>1</sup> they had not combined : *themselves not to have combined*.  
<sup>2</sup> of the Belgæ : not the genitive. <sup>3</sup> had joined : in Latin, *had joined themselves*, if you use *coniungo*. <sup>4</sup> *aliis*. <sup>5</sup> their : omit.

### CHAPTER IV.

1. Indirect Questions : 334 ; H. 529, 1.
2. Substantive Clauses of Result : 332 ; H. 501.
1. Whence<sup>1</sup> did very many of the Belgæ<sup>2</sup> spring ?
2. Cæsar asked whence very many of the Belgæ sprung.
3. What states are in arms ?
4. Cæsar asked what states were in arms.

5. While Divitiacus was king, he was most powerful.
6. From Galba's foresight and justice it results that he is a powerful king.
7. From the valor of the Bellovaci it came about that they demanded the management<sup>3</sup> of the war.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> Whence: **unde**. <sup>2</sup> of the Belgæ: not the genitive.  
<sup>3</sup> management: **summa**.

## CHAPTER V.

1. **Interest** with Gen. of Person: 222; H. 406, III.
2. **Infin.** with Subject-Accus. as Subject: 270; H. 538.
3. **Infin.** with Subject-Accus. as Object: 272 and Rem.; H. 534.
1. The children of the leading men are brought to Cæsar as hostages.
2. He orders all the children to be brought to him.<sup>1</sup>
3. It concerns Cæsar for<sup>2</sup> the senate to come to him.
4. It concerns Divitiacus to send the forces of the Ædui.
5. Cæsar sees that<sup>3</sup> the forces of the Belgæ are hastening.
6. He learns that the Axona is not far away.
7. This river he crossed<sup>4</sup> and protected his camp by means of its banks.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> him: in Latin, *himself*. <sup>2</sup> for: not to be expressed in Latin. <sup>3</sup> that: be careful about *that*-clauses. <sup>4</sup> he crossed: use **trānseo**.

## CHAPTER VI.

1. Ablative of Separation: 243; H. 413.
2. **Cum** Causal with Subjunctive: 326; H. 517.
3. Ablative Absolute: 255 and Note on p. 262; H. 431.
1. The enemy formed a testudo and advanced close to<sup>1</sup> the wall.
2. The enemy having hurled stones<sup>2</sup> made a testudo.



3. Since there were so many,<sup>3</sup> they undermined the wall.
4. They easily cleared the walls of soldiers.
5. The Belgæ having cleared the wall made an attack.<sup>4</sup>
6. Having made an attack<sup>5</sup> they threw missiles against the wall.
7. Since the missiles were many, no one was able to stand on the wall.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> advanced close to: one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> having hurled stones: say, *stones having been hurled*. Why? <sup>3</sup> so many: *tot*. <sup>4</sup> attack: use *impetus*. <sup>5</sup> having made an attack: not *impetum facti*.

## CHAPTER VII.

1. Ablative of Cause: 245; H. 416.
2. Perfect Participles of Deponents: 135, b.; H. 231, 2.
1. At midnight archers and slingers were sent by Cæsar to the town.
2. On account of the assistance of the archers and slingers, the people in the town<sup>1</sup> had good hopes.
3. The enemy had no hope of taking<sup>2</sup> the town, because of the coming of Cæsar's soldiers.
4. Cæsar, delaying<sup>3</sup> a little while, sent aid to Iccius.
5. The enemy, after laying waste the fields, hastened against Cæsar's camp.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> people in the town: one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> of taking: *expugnandi*. <sup>3</sup> delaying: not present participle.

## CHAPTER VIII.

1. Indirect Questions: 334; H. 529, I.
2. Partitive Genitive: 216; H. 396, IV.
1. What can the enemy do by their valor?
2. Cæsar tries what the valor of the enemy is capable of.<sup>1</sup>

3. How much do our men dare ?
4. Cæsar makes trial of the daring<sup>2</sup> of his men.
5. How much space can Cæsar's army occupy ?
6. Cæsar explains<sup>3</sup> over how much space the hill extended in front.

NOTES. —<sup>1</sup> is capable of: *can*. <sup>2</sup> the daring of, etc.: recast the sentence mentally before translating, thus: *Cæsar makes trial what his men dare*. <sup>3</sup> explains: *docet*.

## CHAPTER IX.

1. Clauses of Purpose: 317 and 1; H. 497, II.
2. The Gerundive: 113, d, 2 and 296; H. 544, I.

1. He begins to<sup>1</sup> cross the river.
2. They began to lead their forces across.
3. They lead their forces over in order to take the redoubt.
4. Cæsar has shown that the river was behind him.<sup>2</sup>
5. They will cross so as to lay waste the lands of the Remi.

NOTES. —<sup>1</sup> He begins to: *makes a beginning of*. <sup>2</sup> him: should it be *eum* or *se* ?

## CHAPTER X.

1. Passive of Intransitive Verbs: 230; H. 301, 1.
2. Accusative of Limit: 258, b and N. 1; H. 380, II. 2.
3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 331 and N. 1; H. 498.

1. Those of the Belgæ who were not killed returned home.
2. They resolve to fight in their own territories.
3. They decide that it is best<sup>1</sup> to lead over their army.
4. Divitiacus cannot be persuaded<sup>2</sup> to advance to an unfavorable place.
5. The Ædui were persuaded to return to their homes.
6. The enemy advancing into the river were surrounded.

NOTES. —<sup>1</sup> that it is best: *it to be best*. <sup>2</sup> recast the clause, before trying to turn it into Latin.

## CHAPTER XI.

1. Ablative of Time: 256; H. 429.

2. Perfect Participles: 290, d. 1 and 2; H. 550, N. 4.

1. On the departure of the enemy Cæsar sent ahead all his cavalry.

2. At sunset the three legions returned<sup>1</sup> into camp.

3. In the second watch they attacked the enemy's rear.

4. The Belgæ, fearing<sup>2</sup> an attack, set out at daybreak.

5. The spies, having seen<sup>3</sup> the fugitives, bring back word.<sup>4</sup>

6. Cæsar, after keeping his soldiers in camp, ordered Labienus to set out.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> returned: two words in Latin. <sup>2</sup> fearing: the participle **veritus** does not usually denote time *prior* to that of the main verb in the sentence, like most perfect participles, but the same time. <sup>3</sup> having seen: do not say **visi**. <sup>4</sup> bring back word: use **renūntio**.

## CHAPTER XII.

1. Ablative of Cause, 245; H. 413.

2. Ablative Absolute: 255 and Note on p. 262; H. 431.

1. Cæsar could not take the town on account of the great number<sup>1</sup> of the Suessiones.

2. Owing to<sup>2</sup> the works of the Romans, their "vineæ" and towers, the Suessiones send envoys.<sup>3</sup>

3. The next day Cæsar made a forced march and<sup>4</sup> tried to take the town.

4. The townsmen,<sup>5</sup> making a surrender, got their request.<sup>6</sup>

5. Because of their surrender they got their request.

6. The surrender made, they were spared.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> great number: one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> Owing to: like "on account of," not separately expressed in Latin. <sup>3</sup> envoys: use **lēgātus**. <sup>4</sup> made a forced march and: a different turn in Latin. <sup>5</sup> townsmen: use **oppidānus**. <sup>6</sup> got their request: one word.

## CHAPTER XIII.

1. **Cum** Temporal with Subjunctive : 325 ; H. 521, II. 2.
2. Constructions with **peto** : 239, c. N. 1 ; H. 374, 2, N. 4.

1. When the arms had been given up,<sup>1</sup> the elders came forth.

2. All the elders came out of Bratuspantium and begged Cæsar for peace.<sup>2</sup>

3. Cæsar, when he had received their submission, asked the men for their<sup>3</sup> arms.

4. According to their<sup>4</sup> custom they stretched out their hands and asked the Romans for peace.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> Render this clause in two ways : first by two words, then by a full clause. So each of the three following sentences contains a clause to be rendered in two ways. <sup>2</sup> Cæsar for peace : quite otherwise in Latin. <sup>3</sup> their : omit. <sup>4</sup> their : is this to be expressed by **eōrum** ?

## CHAPTER XIV.

1. Ablative of Means : 248, 8, c ; H. 420.
2. Ablative with **utor**, etc. : 249 ; H. 421, I.

1. Divitiacus intercedes for the conquered Belgæ.

2. Divitiacus begs that Cæsar will show<sup>1</sup> clemency.

3. Cæsar will exercise kindness toward the Belgæ.

4. By the help of the Belgæ the Ædui sustain wars.

5. Divitiacus says the chiefs had fled to<sup>2</sup> Britain.

6. If you show<sup>3</sup> clemency, you will increase our influence.

7. Whatever<sup>4</sup> war befalls, by means of their<sup>5</sup> resources we shall be able to hold out.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> will show : not the future in Latin. <sup>2</sup> to : not **ad**. <sup>3</sup> show : not well rendered by present indicative. <sup>4</sup> whatever : *if any*. <sup>5</sup> their : **eōrum**.

## CHAPTER XV.

1. Partitive Genitive : 216 ; H. 396, IV.
2. Ablative of Quality : 251 ; H. 419, II.
3. Causal Relative Sentences : 320, e ; H. 517.

1. The territories of the Nervii border on the Ambiani.
2. The Nervii blame the Ambiani for having surrendered.<sup>1</sup>
3. The Nervii have<sup>2</sup> great influence among the Belgæ.
4. They use no wine, because it weakens<sup>3</sup> character.
5. Those men think minds lose energy through wine.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> for having surrendered : turn by a relative clause.  
<sup>2</sup> have : say *are* (men) *of*. <sup>3</sup> because it weakens : a relative clause with subjunctive, to indicate their view, as distinguished from a statement of fact.

## CHAPTER XVI.

1. Comparative **amplius**, etc. : 247, c. ; H. 417, N. 2.
2. Accusative of Time and Space : 256 and 257 ; H. 379.

1. The Nervii were distant a three days' march.
2. Cæsar finds out that they are ten miles distant.
3. He learns from prisoners what the Nervii are doing.<sup>1</sup>
4. They have taken a position more than five miles from the Sambre.
5. He learns from prisoners that he<sup>2</sup> is waited for by the Nervii.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> are doing : be careful about the mode. <sup>2</sup> that he : *himself*.

## CHAPTER XVII.

1. Use of **quisquam** : 202, c. ; H. 457.
2. Relative Clauses of Purpose : 317 ; H. 497, I.
3. Substitutes for Partitive Gen. : 216, c. ; H. 397, N. 3.

1. Certain of the Belgæ went by night to the camp of the Nervii.

2. Cæsar says that certain men went<sup>1</sup> to the Nervii.
3. Many of the prisoners found out about the legions.
4. They were sent to their friends to report<sup>2</sup> the matter.
5. To lop trees is a matter<sup>3</sup> of no difficulty at all.
6. Men were sent ahead to select<sup>4</sup> a suitable place.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> went: *to have gone*. <sup>2</sup> to report: not the infinitive.  
<sup>3</sup> matter, etc.: recast, before trying to turn into Latin. <sup>4</sup> to select:  
try two ways.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

1. Descriptive Ablative: 251; H. 419, II.
2. Clauses of Result: 319; H. 500, I. and II.
1. Along the river Sambre were trees<sup>1</sup> of great height.<sup>2</sup>
2. Among these trees the Nervii keep themselves hidden.
3. So<sup>3</sup> close together<sup>4</sup> were these trees that the Romans could not see through.
4. The river is of such depth that men can cross.
5. On the open ground are pickets of great courage.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> trees: *arbor*, fem. <sup>2</sup> height: the same word that means  
*depth*. <sup>3</sup> So: *ita*. <sup>4</sup> close together: *crēber*.

## CHAPTER XIX.

1. Dative of Service: 233 a; H. 390.
2. Imperfect of Repeated Action: 277; H. 469, II.
3. Ablative of Manner: 248 and Rem.; H. 419, III.
1. The cavalry of the enemy kept making attacks.
2. They would attack our horsemen with great courage.
3. These horsemen had been sent ahead by Cæsar as a protection to the camp.
4. Again and again did the enemy pour forward from the woods, where they had hidden.
5. The slingers and archers helped<sup>1</sup> the horsemen.

6. With great speed they would run as far as<sup>2</sup> the woods.
7. With wonderful bravery they engage in battle with the Nervii.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> helped: two words in Latin. <sup>2</sup> as far as: **ad**, or **usque ad**.

### CHAPTER XX.

1. The Gerundive: 113, d.; H. 234.
2. Dative of Apparent Agent: 232; H. 388.
3. Ablative of Agent with **a** or **ab**: 246; H. 415, I.

1. The soldiers are directed<sup>1</sup> by Cæsar.
2. The soldiers must be directed by Cæsar.
3. The flag was displayed by the soldiers.
4. The flag had to be displayed by the soldiers.
5. Experience is often helpful<sup>2</sup> to soldiers.
6. The work is hindered by<sup>3</sup> the near approach<sup>4</sup> of the enemy.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> are directed: use **doceo**. <sup>2</sup> helpful: turn by a noun. <sup>3</sup> by the near approach: why not **a** or **ab**? <sup>4</sup> near approach: one word.

### CHAPTER XXI.

1. Ablative of Gerundive with Prepositions: 301; H. 544, 2.
2. Gerundive Construction instead of Gerund: 296; H. 544, 1.
3. Purpose expressed by Gerundive: 318 and b; H. 544, 2, N. 2.
1. In looking for his shield a soldier lost time.
2. Time is wanting for putting on a helmet.
3. Seeing<sup>1</sup> the standards, each one went forward.
4. A line was drawn up<sup>2</sup> to resist<sup>3</sup> the enemy's charge.
5. Cæsar encouraged the tenth legion for the purpose of strengthening<sup>4</sup> their courage.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> seeing: not the gerundive. <sup>2</sup> A line was drawn up: see chap. xx. <sup>3</sup> resist: **sustineo**. <sup>4</sup> strengthening: use **cōfirmo**.

## CHAPTER XXII.

Clauses of Result with **ut** (**ut nōn**): 319; H. 500, II.

1. So dense was the hedge that it obstructed the view.
2. The result was that no legion could execute orders.
3. One legion opposes the foe in one part, another in another.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

1. Place to which: 258; H. 380, I.
2. Place from which: 258; H. 412, I.
3. Place in which: 258, 4, and 260, b.; H. 425, 1.

1. The Roman soldiers drive the enemy, exhausted by wounds, into an unfavorable place.
2. They followed them up from the left part of the line.
3. As they attempted<sup>1</sup> to cross the river, a great part of them were put to the sword.
4. In another part many of the Belgians were killed.
5. On the front the Belgæ pushed for the camp.
6. But at last they were put to flight.

NOTE.—<sup>1</sup> attempted: recast the sentence and express *as they attempted* by a participle referring to *a great part*.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

1. Position of **causa** with genitive: 245, c.
2. Temporal Clauses with **cum**: 325; H. 521, II. 2.
1. The Romans see that the horsemen are scared.
2. Horsemen were coming to Cæsar to render aid.
3. When the camp-followers had gone out for the purpose of plundering, they saw that our men were fleeing.
4. Seeing the slingers flee,<sup>1</sup> they fled themselves.<sup>2</sup>

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> flee, *to flee*.      <sup>2</sup> themselves: use **ipse**.



## CHAPTER XXV.

1. Ablative Absolute: 255 and a.; H. 431, 4.
2. Perfect Participles of Deponents: 290, d.; H. 195, 2.
3. Substitutes for Perf. Act. Partc.: 290, d. 2; H. 550, N. 4.

1. Cæsar saw that the soldiers of the twelfth legion were hard pushed.
2. Cæsar, seeing<sup>1</sup> the soldiers of the twelfth legion hard pushed, went to the right wing.
3. As<sup>2</sup> all the standard-bearers were wounded, the standards were lost.
4. Then Cæsar snatched a shield from a soldier.
5. The soldiers renewed their courage and delayed<sup>3</sup> the enemy's attack.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> seeing: not well rendered *videns*; try casting into a clause — first with *ubi*, then with *cum*. <sup>2</sup> As . . . wounded: use a participial construction. <sup>3</sup> renewed and delayed: it is better not to turn into Latin by coördinate verbs.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

1. Partitive Genitive: 216; H. 397.
2. Indirect Questions: 334; H. 529, I. & II.
3. Dative of Service and of Object: 233 and a.; H. 390.

1. One was sent for assistance to another.<sup>1</sup>
2. The soldiers of two legions guarded the baggage.<sup>2</sup>
3. He saw in how great peril the camp was.
4. They will leave nothing undone<sup>3</sup> in point of courage.
5. He will report to me in what state the army is.
6. He saw that the tenth was fighting very bravely.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> another: bring the two forms of *alius* together. <sup>2</sup> guarded the baggage: make a different turn. <sup>3</sup> leave nothing undone: a strange Latin idiom.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

1. Temporal Clauses with **cum** : 325 ; H. 521, 2.
2. Clauses of Result with **ut** (**ut nōn**) : 319 ; H. 500, II.
3. Clauses of Purpose with **ut** (**ne**, **ut ne**) : 317 ; H. 497, II.

1. So great is the courage of the Nervii that they fight from the heaps of corpses.
2. Ascending<sup>1</sup> very high banks, they displayed the greatest courage.
3. They dared to cross a wide stream in order to renew the fight.
4. The cavalry, to wipe out<sup>2</sup> their disgrace, advance even into a disadvantageous position.
5. The greatness of their spirit rendered difficult things easy.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> ascending: turn by a clause with **cum**. <sup>2</sup> To wipe out: not the infinitive.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

1. Ablative of Separation : 243 ; H. 413.
2. Substitutes for Partitive Genitive : 216, c ; H. 397, N. 3.
3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with **ut** (**ne**) : 331 ; H. 498.

1. Of five hundred senators, three were left.
2. Out of forty (**quadrāginta**) thousand men, four hundred were able to bear arms.
3. Cæsar will keep their<sup>1</sup> neighbors from doing<sup>2</sup> harm.
4. The name and nation of the Nervii are reduced<sup>3</sup> almost to destruction.
5. He orders the neighboring people to refrain from doing harm to the Nervii.<sup>4</sup>

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> their: not **suus**. <sup>2</sup> doing: omit. <sup>3</sup> reduced: participle used as an adjective in the neuter plural. <sup>4</sup> Nervii: genitive.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

1. Limit of Motion: 258 and b; H. 380 and 2.
2. Accusative of Duration of Time: 256; H. 379.
3. Locative Ablative with Preps.: 260, b; H. 425, I.

1. They carry all their property into one town.
2. During two days they hold out very bravely.
3. For many years they were harassed by the Gauls.
4. On two sides they have high rocks; on another, a wall.
5. Leaving six thousand men this side<sup>1</sup> the Rhine, they return<sup>2</sup> home.

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> this side: *cis*. <sup>2</sup> return: commonly *revertor* in the present, *reverti* in the perfect.

## CHAPTER XXX.

1. Ablative of Time *when*: 256; H. 429.
2. Imperfect of Repeated Action: 277; H. 469, II.
3. Perfect of Completed Action: 279; H. 471, I. and 6.

1. On the day of our arrival frequent sallies were made by the enemy from the town.
2. During the first days they taunted us from the walls.
3. At a distance the soldiers made an "agger" and a tower.
4. Then the Aduatuci began to jeer.<sup>1</sup>
5. Can<sup>2</sup> men of such little stature place a tower on our wall?

NOTES.—<sup>1</sup> jeer: two words in Latin. <sup>2</sup> begin with *num*.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

1. Causal Relative Clauses: 320, e; H. 517.
2. Dative with certain Intrans. Verbs: 227; H. 385.
3. Future Conditions less vivid: 307, b; H. 509, N. 1.

1. They surrender to Cæsar, since he is so powerful.<sup>1</sup>
2. The envoys say the enemy are jealous of their<sup>2</sup> valor.

3. It is better to endure death than slavery.
4. If Cæsar should rob the Aduatuci of their arms,<sup>3</sup> they would be killed.
5. Their enemies would kill them, if they should surrender their arms.
6. It is better to persuade them to give up their arms.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> is so powerful: *can so much* (*tantum*). <sup>2</sup> their: express by the proper form of *suus*. <sup>3</sup> of their arms: not the genitive.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

1. Ablative of Cause: 245; H. 416. •
2. Clauses of Result with *ut* (*ut nōn*): 319; H. 500, II.
3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (*nē*): 331; H. 498.
1. They order the people to deliver up their arms.
2. Through Cæsar's orders, no wrong will be inflicted.
3. Cæsar spared, according to his custom, those who had surrendered.<sup>1</sup>
4. Cæsar orders the neighbors of the Nervii not to harm them.<sup>2</sup>
5. There is so great a quantity of arms in the town that a third part is concealed.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> those who had surrendered: one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> them: dative.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

1. Causal Clauses with *cum*: 326; H. 517.
2. Ablative Absolute: 255 and a; H. 431, 4.
3. Pass. of Intrans. Verbs used impersonally: 230; H. 465, 1.
1. <sup>1</sup>The Aduatuci fought very spiritedly.
2. <sup>1</sup>Thither hasten all the forces of the town.
3. After the shutting<sup>2</sup> of the gates, the townsmen formed a plan.

4. Since they had been driven back, they no longer<sup>3</sup> defended themselves.

5. Now<sup>4</sup> that the town was occupied, the booty was sold.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> Use the passive construction. <sup>2</sup> After the shutting: turn in two ways. <sup>3</sup> no longer: *nōn iam*. <sup>4</sup> Now that the town was occupied: turn in two ways.

#### CHAPTER XXXIV.

1. Ablative of Agent with *ā* (*ab*): 246; H. 415, I.

2. Accus. and Infin. of Indirect Discourse: 336, 2; H. 523, I.

1. All the maritime states were subdued by Cæsar.
2. Cæsar says that the maritime states have been reduced.
3. At this time P. Crassus had been sent with one legion.
4. Crassus informs Cæsar that one legion has been sent to the Veneti.
5. The Veneti, to whom one legion had been sent, border on the ocean.

#### CHAPTER XXXV.

1. Relative Clauses of Purpose: 317, 2; H. 497, I.

2. Verbs of Promising, Hoping, etc.: 330, f.; 535, II.

3. Dative with Certain Adjectives: 234, a; H. 391, I.

1. The embassies promised to return<sup>1</sup> the next summer.
2. Near the Rhine were many nations of barbarians.
3. These barbarians promised to do Cæsar's bidding.
4. The barbarians send men to give<sup>2</sup> hostages.
5. So great was the joy<sup>3</sup> that a thanksgiving was decreed.

NOTES. — <sup>1</sup> to return: in the Latin idiom, *themselves to be going to return*. <sup>2</sup> to give: put in two ways. <sup>3</sup> joy: *gaudium*.

## VOCABULARIES.



## VOCABULARY.

If the learner, as often as he refers to this vocabulary for the meaning of a word, will glance over the group of words given in the Etymological Vocabulary under the same root, he will find his knowledge of the relations and meaning of words, and consequently his power to read Latin, rapidly increase.

- Ā** or **Ab** (abs), prep. w. abl. [APA-], *from, away from*, 6, 13, 18, 24, 25; *at the hands of*, 31, 33; *away, at a distance of*, 7, 30; *in, on, at*, 23, 25; *by*, 1, 5, 9, etc.
- Ab·dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum [2 DA-], *put away; hide*, 19.
- Ab·sum**, -esse, āfuī [ES-], *be away from*, 11; *be distant*, 4, 5, 6, 13, 16, 17, 21; with ā or ab and abl.
- Āc**, see **At·que**.
- Ac·cēdō** (adc-), 3, -cessī, -cessum [CAD-], *go towards, approach*, 13, w. ad and acc.; *arise, increase in*, 7, with dat.
- Ac·cidō** (adc-), 3, -cidī, — [CAD-], *fall to or towards; befall, happen*, 35; w. dat. Cf. incidō, eveniō.
- Ac·cipiō** (adc-), 3, -cēpī, -cep-tum [CAP-], *take to one's self; accept*, 15; *receive*, 13; *suffer*, 33.
- Acervus**, -ī, m. [1 AC-], *thing brought to a point; pile, heap*, 32.
- Acies**, ēī (-ē, 23), f. [1 AC-], *edge; line of battle, army*, 8, 9, 19, 20, 23, 25.
- Ācr·iter**, adv. [1 AC-], *sharply; fiercely, desperately*, 10, 33.
- Ad**, prep. w. acc., *to, towards*, 8, 13, 28, etc.; *up to*, 17; *near*, 4, 19, 21, 33; *for*, 1, 4, 8, 21, etc.; *after, according to*, 31.
- Ad·aequō**, 1 [IC-, AIC-], *make equal to, equal*, 32.
- Ad·clivis** (acc-), -e, adj. [CLĪ-], *sloping upward*, 29. Cf. declivis.
- Ad·clivitās** (acc-), -ātis, f. [CLĪ-], *upward slope, rise*, 18. Cf. declivitās, dēiectus.
- Ad·com·modō** (accomm-), 1 [2 MA-, MAD-], *fit or adapt to; put on*, 21. Cf. induō.
- Ad·ducō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead or bring to*, 5; *lead up*, 1; w. ad and acc.
- Ad·eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum [1 I-], *go to; reach, get at*, 7.
- Ad·ferō** (aff-), -ferre, attulī, allātum [1 FER-], *bring or carry to*, 1.



- Ad·finitās** (aff-), -ātis, f. [2 FID-], *relationship by marriage*, 4. Cf. propinquitās.
- Ad·gredior** (agg-), 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *go to, approach; attack*, 9, 10. Cf. adorior.
- Ad·iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC-], *throw to or against; hurl, cast*, 21.
- Ad·itus**, -ūs, m. [1 I-, AI-], *going to, approach*, 16, 29; *access, admittance*, 15.
- Ad·iuvō**, 1, -iūvī, -iūtum [DIV-, DI-, DIAV-], *help, aid*, 17.
- Ad·ministrō**, 1 [2 MAN-, MI-], *put the hand to; attend to*, 20, 22.
- Ad·orior**, 4, -ortus [OL-, OR-], *rise up against; attack*, 11, 17. Cf. adgredior.
- Ad·propinquō** (app-), 1 [PARC-, PLEC-], *come near to, approach*, 10, 31, w. dat.; 19, w. ad and acc. Cf. subeō, succēdō.
- Aduātuci**, -ōrum, m., *tribe, originally German, in Belgian Gaul, on left bank of the Maas*, 4, 16, 29, 31.
- Ad·ventus**, -ūs, m. [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *coming to or drawing near; approach, arrival*, 7, 16, 25, 27, 30. Cf. successus, aditus.
- Ad·versus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of advertō) [VERT-], *turned to or towards; opposite, in the face*, 8, 18, 24; *adversō colle, up hill*, 19; w. dat.
- Aedi·ficiū**, -ī, n. [AID-; FAC-], *building*, 7.
- Aedui**, -ōrum, m., *powerful Celtic people between upper courses of Loire and Seine*, 5, 10, 14, 15.
- Aeduius**, -a, -um, adj., *Aeduan*, 5, 14.
- Aegrō**, adv., *with regret or displeasure; barely, with difficulty*, 6.
- Aequal·iter**, adv. [IC-, AIC-], *evenly*, 18.
- Aestās**, -ātis, f. [AID-], *burning season; summer*, 2, 35.
- Aestuārium**, -ī, n. [AID-], *pertaining to rolling; inlet, sea-marsh*, 28.
- Aetās**, -ātis, f. [1 I-, AI-], *age, old age*, 16.
- Ager**, -grī, m. [AG-], *cultivated land; land, field*, 4, 5, 7, 9.
- Ag·ger**, -eris, m. [GER-], *that which is brought to a place, i.e. materials for a mound*, 20; *mound, rampart*, 12, 30, 32.
- Agmen**, -inis, n. [AG-], *that which is set in motion; marching column*, 11, 17, 19, 23, 26.
- Agō**, 3, ēgī, āctum [AG-], *put in motion; bring up*, 12, 30; *take along*, 29; *carry on, do*, 20.
- Aliās**, adv. (acc. pl. f. of alius) [2 AL- (ALI-)], *at another time*; *aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another*, 29.
- Aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 AL-, (ALI-)], *belonging to another, another's*, 10.
- Al·iter**, adv. [2 AL-], *otherwise, in another manner*, 19.
- Alius**, -a, -ud, adj., gen. alius [2 AL- (ALI-)], *other, another, different*, 20, 22, 23, 24, 26, 31.
- Alter**, -era, -erum, adj., gen. -ius [2 AL-], *other (of two)*, 5, 21; *alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*.

- Altitudō**, -inis, f. [1 AL-], *elevation, height*, 5, 12, 18, 31, 32.
- Altus**, -a, -um, adj. [1 AL-], *become great by nourishment; lofty, high*, 27, 29.
- Ambiānī**, -ōrum, m., *Belgian tribe near modern Amiens*, 4, 15.
- Amicitia**, -ae, f. [AM-], *friendship*, 14.
- Amittō**, 3, -misi, -missum [MIT-], *let go from one's self; lose*, 25.
- Amplificō**, 1 [PLE-, PLO-; FAC-], *make larger, increase*, 14.
- Amplius**, adv. (n. compar. of *amplus*) [ambi-; PLE-, PLO-], *more*, 7, 16, 29.
- Andocumborius**, -ī, m., *man of high rank among the Remi*, 3.
- Andēs**, -ium, m., *tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, modern Anjou*, 35.
- Angustus**, -a, -um, adj. *contracted; narrow, difficult; in angustō*, *in a critical state*, 25.
- Animus**, -ī, m. [AN-], *soul; mind, feelings*, 21; *spirit, courage*, 15, 21, 25, 27; *character*, 1.
- Annus**, -ī, m., *that which goes round; year*, 29.
- Ante**, [ANT-], *before; as adv., = anteā, before, formerly*, 12, 22, 33; *as prep. w. acc., before (of time)*, 35; *(of place)*, 32.
- Antiquitus**, adv. [ANT-], *from ancient times; in olden times*, 4; *from of old*, 17.
- Apertus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of *aperiō*) [2 PAR-, POR-], *without covering; open, unobstructed*, 18, 19; *uncovered, exposed*, 23.
- Appellō** (adp-), 1 [PAL-, PEL-], *bring one's self to a person; accost, address*, 25; *call*, 4.
- Apud**, prep. w. acc. [APA-], *near, among*, 2, 4, 7, 14.
- Arbitror**, 1 [BA-, VA-], *be a hearer or spectator, think, suppose, believe*, 4, 28; w. acc. and inf.
- Arbor**, -oris, f. [1 AL-, AR-], *tree*, 17.
- Arcessō**, 3, -ivi, -itum [CAD-], *cause to come to; summon, send for*, 20.
- Arduus**, -a, -um, adj. [1 AL-, AR-, strengthened to ARDH-], *steep*, 33.
- Ariēs**, -etis, m., *battering-ram*, 32.
- Arma**, -ōrum, n. [AR-], *things adapted; arms, weapons*, 3, 4, 9, 13, etc.
- Armātūra**, -ae, f. [AR-], *arming; equipment*, 10, 24.
- Armō**, 1 [AR-], *furnish with arms; arm, equip*, 4, 27.
- Ascendō** (adsc-), 3, -di, -scēsum [SCAND-], *mount up, climb*, 27.
- Ascensus** (adsc-), -ūs, m. [SCAND-], *ascending; ascent, way up*, 33.
- At**, conj., *but, on the other hand*, 23, 27.
- Atque** (before vowels and consonants), *ac* (before consonants only), *and also, and especially*, and, 3, 5, 6, etc.; *as, 6; than*, 19. Cf. *et* and *-que*.
- Atrebatēs**, -um, m., *Belgian people in the region of modern Arras*, 4, 16, 23.

**At·tingō** (adt-), 3, -tigī, -tāctum, [TAG-], *touch against; approach, reach*, 32; *border upon*, 15, 34.

**Auctōritās**, -ātis, f. [AVG-], *power, standing, influence*, 4, 14, 15.

**Audāc·ter**, adv. [1 AV-], *boldly*, 10, 26.

**Audeō**, 2, ausus [1 AV-], *venture, dare*, 8, 17, 19, 27; w. complementary infin.

**Audiō**, 4 [2 AV-], *listen to; hear, hear about*, 12, 31, w. acc.; 12, w. acc. and infin.

**Aulerci**, -ōrum, m., *tribe in Bretagne and Normandy*, 34.

**Aurunculēius**, -ī, m., *L. A. Cotta, lieutenant of Cæsar*, 11.

**Au·t**, conj. [2 TA-], or (excluding the other), 30, 33; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*, 25.

**Au·tem**, postpositive conj. [2 TA-], *but, on the other hand*, 9; moreover, 19.

**Auxilium**, -ī, n. [AVG-], *aid, support, assistance*, 10, 24, 29; pl. *auxiliary forces*, 14. Cf. subsidium.

**Ā·vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum [VERT-], *turn away from*. Aversī, see note, 26.

**Axona**, -ae, f., *river in country of the Belgæ*, 5, 9.

### B.

**Baculus**, -ī, m., *P. Sextius B., centurion*, 25.

**Baleāris**, -e, adj., *Balearic, of the Balearic Islands*, 7.

**Barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, non-Roman*, 35.

**Belgæ**, -ārum, m., *collective name of tribes living in the country bounded by the Seine, Marne, Moselle, Rhine, and the ocean*, 1, 2, 3, following.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, m., *strongest tribe of the Belgæ, north of the Seine and on right bank of the Oise and Somme*, 4, 5, 10, 13, 14.

**Bellum**, -ī, n. [DVA-, DVI-], *contest between two; war*, 4, 9, 14, 16, 29, 31, 35.

**Bibrax**, -ctis, f. (n.?), *town of the Remi*, 6.

**Boduōgnātus**, -ī, m., *leader of the Nervii*, 23.

**Bratuspantium**, -ī, n., *chief town of the Bellovacī*, 13.

**Brevitās**, -ātis, f., *shortness, brevity*, 20, 30. Cf. exiguītās.

**Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain*, 4, 14.

### C.

**Cadāver**, -eris, n. [CAD-], *that which falls down dead; dead body*, 27.

**Cadō**, 3, cecidī, cāsum [CAD-], *fall*, 27.

**Caeroesi**, -ōrum, m., *German tribe in Belgian Gaul*, 4.

**Caesar**, -aris, m., *Gaius Julius Cæsar, conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries*, 1, 2, 5, etc.

**Calamitās**, -ātis, f. [SCAL-], *injury, disaster*, 14, 28.

**Caletī**, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), m., *tribe in Normandy, on the Seine*, 4.

- Cālō**, -ōnis, m., *groom, soldier's servant*, 24, 26, 27.
- Captīvus**, -a, -um, adj. [CAP-], *taken prisoner; captive*, 16, 17.
- Caput**, -itis, n. [CAP-], *head; individual, person*, 33.
- Carnūtēs**, -um, m., *important Gallic tribe between the Loire and Seine rivers*, 35.
- Castellum**, -ī, n. dim. [SCAD-, CAD-], *redoubt, stronghold*, 8, 9, 29, 30, 33.
- Castra**, -ōrum, n. [SCAD-, CAD-], *camp*, 2, 5, 6, etc.
- Cāsus**, -ūs, m. [CAD-], *falling; happening; chance*, 21; *misfortune*, 31.
- Causa**, -ae, f. [CAV-], *cause, reason*, 1, 7, 10, 11; *causā*, used like prep. post-positive, *for the sake of, for the purpose of*, 10, 15, 17, 20, 21, 24.
- Cēdō**, 3, cessi, cessum [CAD-], *go; fall back; give way, retreat*, 19.
- Celeritās**, -ātis, f. [CEL-], *swiftness, quickness*, 12, 19, 20, 26, 31.
- Celeriter**, adv. [CEL-], *swiftly, quickly, promptly*, 3, 12, 23, 33.
- Cēlō**, 1 [2 CAL-, SCAL-], *hide, conceal*, 32, 33.
- Centum**, num. adj. indeclin. [CEN-], *hundred*, 4.
- Centuriō**, -ōnis, m. [CEN-], *commander of a century, centurion, captain*, 17, 25.
- Certus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 CER-, CRE-], *determined; definite*, 11; *certain, regular*, 22; *certiōrem facere, inform*, 1, 2, 10, 34; w. acc. and infin.
- Cēteri**, -ōrum, pl. adj. [CA-, CI-], *the others, rest*, 3. Cf. reliquī.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, m., *German tribe which invaded Gaul and the Province in the second century*, 4, 29.
- Circiter**, adv. [CVR-, CIR-; 1 I-], *going in a circle; about, not far from*, 2, 8, 13, 18, 32.
- Circuītus**, -ūs, m. [CVR-, CIR-; 1 I-], *going in a circle; circumference*, 29, 30.
- Circum**, prep. w. acc. [CVR-, CIR-], *around, about; here only in composition*.
- Circumiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC-], *throw around; place around*, 6.
- Circumūniō**, 4, [2 MV-], *wall up around; blockade*, 30.
- Circumveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come around; surround, outflank*, 8, 10, 23, 24, 26.
- Cis**, prep. w. acc. [CA-, CI-], *on this side, this side of*, 3.
- Citerior**, -us, -ōris, adj. [CA-, CI-], *more on this side; hither, nearer*, 1, 2.
- Citrā**, prep. w. acc. [CA-, CI-], *on this side, this side of*, 29. Cf. cis.
- Civitās**, -ātis, f. *citizenship; community*, 3, 4, 5, etc.
- Clāmor**, -ōris, m. [1 CAL-], *loud call; shouting*, 11, 24.
- Claudō**, 3, -sī, -sum, *shut, close*, 33; *close, bring up*, 19.
- Clēmētia**, -ae, f. [CLĪ-; 1 MAN-, MEN-], *indulgent disposition; gentleness, mildness*, 14, 31.
- Coacervō**, 1 [1 AC-], *heap up*, 27.

- Co·epī**, -isse, -ptus (defective verb, with tenses from present stem lacking) [AP-, OP-], *have begun, began*, 5, 6, 10, 12, 13, 19, 23, 26.
- Cō·gnōscō**, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [GNA-, GNO-], *understand thoroughly; perceive, learn, ascertain*, 2, 5, 11, 17, w. acc. and inf.; 4, 26, w. indir. question; plperf. *knew*, 10.
- Cō·gō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [AG-], *drive together, compel; gather, rally*, 2, 5. Cf. *condūcō*.
- Co·hors**, -hortis, f., *multitude enclosed: cohort*, 5, 25.
- Co·hortātiō**, -ōnis, f., *cheering on, urging, encouraging, appeal to*, 25.
- Co·hortor**, 1, *cheer on, urge, call upon*, 5, 20, 21, 25, w. acc.; 21 foll. by clause w. ut.
- Collis**, -is, m., *hill*, 8, 18, 19, 22.
- Com·meātus** (comm-), -ūs, m., *going to and fro; train of supplies, provisions*, 5, 9.
- Com·ēs**, -itis, m., *comrade*.
- Com·memorō** (comm-), 1 [1 SMAR-, MAR-], *keep in mind; mention, relate*, 28.
- Com·mittō** (comm-), 3, -misi, -missum [MIT-], *cause to go together; join*, 19, 21.
- Com·modē** (comm-), adv. [2 MA-, MAD-], *duly, aptly; easily, advantageously*, 20.
- Com·moveō** (comm-), 2, -mōvī, -mōtum [1 MV-, MOV-], *move violently; startle, alarm, make anxious*, 2, 31.
- Com·mūnis** (comm-), -e, adj. [2 MV-], *serving together; common, general*, 4, 5.
- Com·mūtātiō** (comm-), -ōnis, f. [1 MV-, MOV-], *change*, 27.
- Com·parō** (comp-), 1 [2 PAR-, POR-], *bring or put together; get ready, provide, procure*, 2, 12.
- Com·pellō** (comp-), 3, -pulī, -pulsum [PAL-, PEL-], *drive together, gather; drive in a body, rout*, 23.
- Com·pleō** (comp-), 2, -ēvī, -ētum [PLE-, PLO-], *fill completely; fill*, 24.
- Com·plūrēs** (comp-), -a (-ia), gen. -ium, adj. [PLE-, PLO-, PLV-], *several together, a large number*, 17.
- Con-**, for *scom-* = *cum* [SEC-], *with, together*; in composition, denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.
- Con·cidō**, 3, -cidi, -cisum [2 SAC-, SEC-, SCID-], *cut up entirely; cut to pieces, destroy*, 11.
- Con·cilium**, -ī, n. [1 CAL-], *that which is called together; meeting, assembly*, 4, 10.
- Gon·currō**, 3, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum [CEL-, CER-], *run together; hurry, rally, gather*, 20, 33.
- Con·dictiō**, -ōnis, f., [DIC-, DIC], *talking together; agreement, stipulation, terms*, 15, 32.
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, m., *Belgic tribe on the Meuse*, 4.
- Con·ducō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead together; collect, muster*, 2; *hire*, 1.
- Cōn·ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [1 FER-], *bring or bear together; gather, collect*, 15, 25, 29; with reflex. pronoun, *betake one's self*, go, 13.

- Cōn·fertus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of cōn·ferciō), *pressed together; compact, in close array*, 23; *crowded together*, 25.
- Cōn·ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [FAC-], *make completely; perform, accomplish*, 12; *raise, put in the field*, 4; *exhaust, wear out*, 23, 25, 27.
- Cōn·fidō**, 3, -fisis sum [1 FID-, FĪD-], *trust entirely; believe, trust firmly*, 30, w. acc. and infin.
- Cōn·firmō**, 1 [2 FER-], *make firm; give assurance, pledge one's self*, 15, w. acc. and infin.; *encourage, reassure*, 19; *confirm*, 11.
- Cōn·fligō**, 3, -xī, -ctum [FLAG-, FLIG-], *strike or dash together; contend, fight*, 5; w. cum and abl.
- Con·gredior**, 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *step together; meet, have an engagement with, fight*, 23. Cf. cōnfligō, pūgnō.
- Cōn·iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC], *throw together; hurl*, 6, 27; *drive, rout*, 23; *place hastily*, 16, 28. Cf. compellō.
- Con·iungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [IV- IVG-], *draw together, join*, 3, 4, 26.
- Con·iūrō**, 1 [IV-, IVG-], *swear together; make a sworn agreement, conspire*, 1, 3.
- Con·locō** (coll-), 1, *place, station, set*, 8, 19, 22, 29, 30.
- Cōnor**, 1, *undertake, attempt*, 9, 10, 12, 23.
- Cōn·sanguineus**, -a, -um, adj., *possessing the same blood; kindred*, 3.
- Cōn·scribō**, 3, -psi, -ptum [SCARP-], *write together (in a list); enroll, enlist*, 2, 8, 19.
- Cōn·sēnsus**, -ūs, m. [SENT-], *agreement, harmony, concerted action*, 28, 29.
- Cōn·sentīō**, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm [SENT-], *feel with*, 3; *join hands (with), make common cause with*, 3; w. cum and abl.
- Cōn·sequor**, 3, -secūtus [SEC-], *follow thoroughly; attain, obtain*, 1.
- Cōn·servō**, 1 [SAL-, SER-], *keep thoroughly; preserve, save, spare*, 12, 15, 28, 31, 32.
- Cōn·sidō**, 3, -sēdi, -sessum [SED-, SID-], *sit down together; settle, take position*, 4, 16.
- Cōn·silium**, -ī, n., *consultation; design, plan of action*, 9, 14, 33; *advice, suggestion*, 17.
- Cōn·similis**, -e, adj., [2 SA-, SIM-], *altogether like, quite similar*, 11; w. dat.
- Cōn·stō**, 3, -stitī, — [STA-], *make stand; take position, stand*, 6, 23, 26; *make a stand, rally*, 11, 17, 21; *depend upon, be based on*, 33.
- Cōn·spectus**, -ūs, m. [SPEC-], *view, sight*, 25.
- Cōn·spiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectum [SPEC-], *look at with attention; behold, catch sight of, see*, 21, 26, w. acc.; 24, w. acc. and infin.
- Cōn·spicor**, 1 [SPEC-], *get a sight of, espy, observe*, 26, 27. Cf. cōnspeciō.
- Cōn·stanter**, adv. [STA-], *standing firm; uniformly*, 2.

**Cōn·stituō, 3**, -uī, -ūtum [STA-], *place together; determine, appoint, fix*, 11; *set up, place*, 12, 30; *station*, 8, 19; *decide*, 10, w. acc. and infin. Cf. statuō.

**Cōn·suēscō, 3**, -suēvī, -suētum [SOVO-, SVO-], *accustom; become accustomed*; pf. *be accustomed* (= solēre), 14, 31.

**Cōn·suētūdō, -inis**, f. [SOVO-, SVO-], *custom, habit*, 17, 19, 32. Cf. mōs.

**Con·temptus, -ūs, m.** [TEM-], *scorn, contempt*, 30.

**Con·tendō, 3**, -dī, -ntum [1 TA-, TEN-], *strain with all one's might; march, push on, hasten*, 7, 9, 10, 12, 19, 23, 24; *struggle, contend*, 9, 13, 30.

**Con·tineō, 2**, -uī, -tentum [1 TA-, TEN-], *hold or keep together; restrain, hold back*, 11; *keep*, 11, 18, 30.

**Con·trā, adv.** [SEC-], *against, on the other hand*, 17; as prep., w. acc., 1, 3, 13, 33.

**Con·trārius, -a, -um, adj.** [SEC-], *situated over against, opposite*, 18; w. dat.

**Con·tumēlia, -ae, f.** [TEM-], *great swelling; disgrace, insult*, 14.

**Con·vēniō, 4**, -vēnī, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come together, meet*, 5, 10, 12; *impersonal, be agreed upon*, 19.

**Convertō, 3**, -tī, -sum [VERT-], *wholly turn; turn around, turn, direct*, 26.

**Con·vocō, 1** [VOC-], *call together, summon*, 10.

**C·ōpia, -ae, f.** [AP-, OP-], *abundance; ample supply, supply*, 2; pl., *resources, supplies*, 10; *forces, troops*, 5, 7, 8, etc.

**Cornū, -ūs, n.** [CAR-], *horn; wing of an army*, 23, 25.

**Corpus, -oris, n.** [1 CER-, CRE-], *what is made; body*, 30; *corpse*, 10, 27.

**Cortex, -icis, m. and f.** [CAR-], *part that splits off; bark*, 33.

**Cotī·diē, adv.** [CA-; DIV-, DI-], *on every day; daily, regularly*, 8.

**Cotta, -ae, m., L. Arunculeius**, one of Caesar's lieutenants, 11.

**Crassus, -ī, m., P. Licinius**, one of Caesar's lieutenants, 34.

**Crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.** [1 CER-, CRE-], *made to increase; thick, numerous, frequent*, 1, 17, 30.

**Crēdō, 3**, -didī, -ditum [CRAT-; 2 DA-], *put trust in; believe*, 33, w. acc. and infin. Cf. cōfidō.

**Crēs, -ētis, m., Cretan**, 7.

**Cruciātus, -ūs, m.** [CVR-, CIR-], *torture*, 31.

**Cum, prep. w. abl.** [SEC-], *with, in company with, together with*, 3, 10, 13, etc.; *at same time with*, 5, 7, 16; *with, provided with*, 11, 33.

**Cum, conj.** [CA-, CI-], *temporal, when*, 1, 4, 6, 8, following; *cum primum, as soon as*, 2; *causal, as, since*, 11, 17, 22, etc.; *concessive, although, while*, 29; *cum . . . tum, both . . . and*, 4.

**C·unctus, -a, -um, adj.** [IV-, IVG-], *all together; all, entire*, 29.

**Cupīō, 3**, -ivī, -itum, *desire eagerly, be eager*, 25.

**Curiosolītēs**, -um, m. (acc. -ēs, -ūs), *people of Armorica Gaul*, 34.  
**Cursus**, -ūs, m. [CEL-, CER-], *running, speed*, 23, 26.  
**Custōdia**, -ae, f. [SCV-, CV-], *guard-keeping; guard, protection*, 29.

## D.

- Dē**, prep. w. abl., *from; down from*, 32; of time, *in, about*, 7; *for, on account of*, 7; *for, about, concerning*, 2, 4, 6, etc.  
**Dē·beō** [for *dehibeō*], 2, -uī, -itum [HAB-], *have from; impersonal, owe, ought*, 27, 33.  
**Decem**, num. adj. indecl. [DEC-], *ten*, 4.  
**Dē·cernō**, 3, -crēvī, -crētum [2 CER-, CRE-], *decide; decide upon, decree*, 35.  
**Dē·certō**, 1 [2 CER-], *fight a decisive battle*, 10. Cf. *cōnfigō*, *congregior*, *dīmicō*, *pūgnō*.  
**Decimus**, -a, -um, adj. [DEC-], *tenth*, 21, 23, 25, 26.  
**Dē·clivis**, -e, adj. [CLĪ-], *inclining down-hill, sloping*, 18.  
**Decumānus** (deci-), -a, -um, adj. [DEC-], *of the tenth cohort, in the phrase, decumāna porta, rear gate, 24, main entrance to a Roman camp*.  
**Dē·currō**, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum [CEL-, CER-], *run down*, 19, 21.  
**Dē·dīticius**, -a, -um, adj. [1 DA-], *one who has surrendered; as noun, m., prisoner of war*, 17; *subjects*, 32.  
**Dē·dītō**, -ōnis, f. [1 DA-], *giving one's self up; surrender*, 12, 13, 32, 33.  
**Dē·dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum [1 DA-], *give up or away; surrender*, 15, 28, 32.  
**Dē·dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead away, bring off*, 2, 33, 35; *bring (to)*, 10, 31. Cf. *redigō*.  
**Dē·fendō**, 3, -dī, -fēnsūm [FEN-, FEND-], *thrust away; repel*, 29; *defend*, 10, 12, 31, 33.  
**Dē·fēnsiō**, -ōnis, f. [FEN-, FEND-], *protection, defence*, 7.  
**Dē·fēnsor**, -ōris, m. [FEN-, FEND-], *defender*, 6, 12.  
**Dē·ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [1 FER-], *bear or bring away; bear, report*, 17, 19; *bestow*, 4; w. ad and acc.  
**Dē·ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [FAC-], *make from; give out, fail*, 10; *revolt (from), forsake, desert*, 14; w. ab and abl.  
**Dē·ficiō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC-], *hurl down; drive away, dislodge*, 27.  
**Dē·iectus**, -ūs, m. [IA-, IAC-], *slope, declivity*, 8, 22. Cf. *dē-clivis*, *adclivis*.  
**De·inde**, adv. [2 I-], *from here; thereupon, then, in the next place*, 1.  
**Dē·leō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [LI-], *wipe out, destroy*, 27.  
**Dē·ligō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [1 LEG-, LIG-], *choose out; choose, select*, 17, 18, 29. Cf. *ēligō*.  
**Dē·mōnstrō**, 1 [1 MAN-, MEN-], *point out, explain, mention*, 1, 9, 22; w. acc. and infin., 17.



- Dēnique**, adv., and *thereupon*, finally; at any rate, at least, 33.
- Dēnsus**, -a, -um, adj., *thick, dense, close*, 22.
- Dē·pōnō**, 3, -posui, -positum [1 SA-, SI-], *put aside or down; lay aside, place in safety*, 29.
- Dē·populor**, 1 [SCAL-, SPOL-], *lay waste, ravage*, 7.
- Dē·precor**, 1 [PREC-], *avert by praying; petition against, pray to be spared*, 31.
- Dē·serō**, 3, -ui, -tum [1 SER-, SVAR-], *undo, sever connection with; abandon, desert*, 25, 29.
- Dē·sistō**, 3, -stiti, — [STA-], *remove from; cease, stop*, 11.
- Dē·spectus**, -ūs, m. [SPEC-], *looking down upon; opportunity for distant views, prospect*, 29.
- Dē·spērō**, 1 [SPA-, PA-], *give up hope; despair of*, 24.
- Dē·spoliō**, 1 [SCAL-, SPOL-], *rob, deprive*, 31; w. acc. and abl.
- Dē·sum**, -esse, -fui [ES-], *be away; be lacking, fail*, 21. Cf. *dēficiō*.
- Dē·terreō**, 2, -ui, -itum [TER-, TERS-], *frighten from; prevent, deter*, 3.
- Dē·trahō**, 3, -xi, -ctum, *drag from; take from, remove*, 25.
- Dē·trūdō**, 3, -si, -sum, *thrust away; remove*, 21. Cf. *dētrahō*.
- Dē·veniō**, 4, -vēni, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come down into; come to, reach*, 21; w. prep. and acc. Cf. *adpropinquō*.
- Dexter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, on the right hand*, 23, 25,
- (Dicō)**, -ōnis, f., no nom. [DIC-, DIC-], *sway, control*, 34.
- Dicō**, 3, -xi, -ctum [DIC-, DIC-], *point out by speaking; say, state, mention*, 1, 3, 4, etc.; w. acc. and infin.
- Diēs**, -ei, m. and f. [DIV-, DI-], *day*, 2, 5, 6, etc.
- Dif·ficilis** (*disf-*), -e, adj. [FAC-], *not to be done; difficult, hard*, 27.
- Dif·ficultās** (*disf-*), -ātis, f. [FAC-], *difficulty, strait, trouble*, 20.
- Di·ligen·ter**, adv. [1 LEG-, LIG-], *attentively, scrupulously, with painstaking*, 5, 28.
- Di·mētor**, 4, -mēnsus [1 MA-, MAN-], *measure off; stake off, lay out, survey*, 19.
- Di·micō**, 1, *move rapidly back and forth; fight, contend*, 21. Cf. *cōnfigō*, *congrederi*, *contendō*.
- Di·mittō**, 3, -misi, -missum [MIT-], *send out in different directions, despatch*, 5, 14, 21.
- Di·ripiō**, 3, -iit, -reptum [RAP-, RVP-], *tear in pieces; sack, plunder*, 17.
- Dis·cēdō**, 3, -cessi, -cessum [CAD-], *go apart; go away, depart*, 7, 11, 20.
- Dis·cessus**, -ūs, m. [CAD-], *departure, withdrawal*, 14.
- Dis·sipō**, 1, *scatter, break up*, 24.
- Dis·tineō**, 2, -ui, -tentum [1 TA-, TEN-], *keep apart; prevent union of, separate*, 5.
- Diū**, adv. [DIV-, DI-], *by day; for a long time, long; compar. diū·tius*, 1, 6, 10,

**DI·versus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of divertō) [VERT-], *turned away from; facing in different directions*, 22; *different*, 23; *separated*, 24.

**DIVīnus**, -a, -um, adj. [DIV-, DI-], *of the gods, divine*, 31.

**DIVITIACUS**, -ī, m., leader of the *Ædui*, brother of *Dumnorix*, 5, 10, 14, 15; *chieftain of the Suesiones*, 4.

**Dŏ**, dare, dedī, datum [1 DA-], *give*, 2, 3, 20, 21, 35; *inter sē, exchange*, 1.

**DOCEŏ**, 2, -uī, -ctum [DIC-, DAC-(DOC-)], *show, teach, explain*, 5, 20.

**DOMESTICUS**, -a, -um, adj. [DOM-], *of home, native, own*, 10.

**DOMI·cilium**, -ī, n. [DOM-; 2 CAL-, SCAL-], *dwelling-place*, 29.

**DOMINOR**, 1, lord *ū*, be master, 31.

**DOMUS**, -ūs, f. [DOM-], *home*, 10, 11, 24, 29.

**Du·bitō**, 1 [DVA-; BA-], *go to and fro; doubt, hesitate*, 2, 23.

**Du·centī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [DVA-, DVI-; CEN-], *two hundred*, 18, 29.

**Dŭcō**, 3, -xī, ductum [DVC-], *lead, conduct*, 8, 12, 13, 19.

**Dum** [for dium], adv. [DIV-, DI-], *while*.

**Duo**, -ae, -, num. adj. [DVA-, DVI-], *two*, 2, 7, 8, 9, etc.

**Duo·decimus**, -a, -um, adj. [DVA-, DVI-; DEC-], *twelfth*, 23, 25.

**Duo·dē·vigintī**, num. adj. indecl. [DVA-, DVI-], *eighteen*, 6.

**Du·plex**, -icis, adj. [DVA-; PARC-, PLEC-], *twofold, double*, 29.

**Dux**, -cis, m. [DVC-], *leader*, 23; *guide*, 7.

## E.

**Ē** or **Ex**, prep. w. abl., *from, out of*, 3, 6, 13, etc.; *after*, 6; *on*, 8; *in consequence of*, 35.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, m., *Belgian people near the Rhine*, 4.

**Ē·ditus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of ēdō) [1 DA-], *set forth; elevated, rising*, 8.

**Ē·dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead out, lead forth*, 8.

**Ē·ficiō** (ect-), 3, -fēcī, -fectum [FAC-], *work out; bring about, effect*, 5, 17; w. ut and subj.

**Ē·gredior**, 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *go out; sally forth*, 24; *depart from, go forth*, 11, 13.

**Ē·gregiē**, adv., *out of the flock; remarkably, excellently*, 29.

**Ē·ligō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [1 LEG-, LIG-], *choose out; pick from, choose*, 4. Cf. dēligo.

**Ē·mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missum [MIT-], *send out; hurl, let fly*, 23.

**Ēmō**, 3, ēmī, ēmptum [EM-], *take in exchange; buy*, 33.

**Ē·nāscor**, 3, -nātus [GEN-, GN-, GNA-], *grow out, spring up; sprout forth*, 17.

**Enim**, co-ord. conj., post-positive, *for, in fact*, 17. Cf. nam.

**Eō**, adv. (old dat. or abl. n. of is) [2 I-], *there, thither*, 3, 5, 25, 33.

**Equēs**, -itis, m. [2 AC-], *horseman, cavalry-man, knight*, 9, 18, 19, 24, 26, 27.

**Equester**, -tris, -tre, adj. [2 AC-], *of horsemen, cavalry*, 8, 9.

**Equitātus**, -ūs, m. [2 AC-], *riding; cavalry*, 10, 11, 17, 19.

**Ergō**, *because of; therefore*.

**Ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f. [RAP-, RVP-], *bursting forth; sally*, 33.

**Esuvii**, -ōrum, m., *people in Normandy*, 34.

**Et**, co-ord. conj. *and*, 1, 2, 3, etc.; *et... et, both... and*, 3, 4, 5, etc.

**Etiam**, adv. and conj. *and now; also*, 1, 4, 14, 16, 17, 21; *even, still*, 4, 25, 27.

**Ēventus**, -ūs, m. [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *coming forth; outcome, issue, result*, 22.

**Ex**, see **Ē**.

**Exagitō**, 1 [AG-], *disturb, harass*, 29.

**Exanimō**, 1 [AN-], *deprive of life; make breathless*, 23.

**Exaudiō**, 4 [2 AV-], *hear distinctly; hear from a distance*, 11.

**Excedō**, 3, -cessi, -cessum [CAD-], *go out; withdraw, go away*, 25.

**Excursiō**, -ōnis, f. [CEL-, CER-], *running forth; sally*, 30. Cf. **ēruptiō**.

**Exeo**, -ire, -iī, -itum [1 I-], *go out; withdraw*, 33. Cf. **excedō**.

**Exercitō**, 1 [ARC-] (*drive out of the enclosure*), *keep busy; train, drill*, 20.

**Exercitus**, -ūs, m. [ARC-], *trained body of men; army*, 1, 2, 5, etc.

**Exiguitās**, -ātis, f., *scantiness, shortness*, 24, 33.

**Eximius**, -a, -um [EM-], *taken out from; eminent, excellent, high*, 8.

**Existimō**, 1, *judge, value; judge, think, believe*, 2, 15, 17, 31; w. acc. and infin.

**Expeditus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of **expediō**) [PED-], *unencumbered, in light marching order*, 19.

**Expellō**, 3, -puli, -pulsum [PAL-, PEL-], *drive out, banish*, 4.

**Experior**, 4, -pertus [1 PAR-, PER-], *try thoroughly; test, try*, 16.

**Explōrātor**, -ōris, m. [PLV- (PLOV-)], *searcher out; scout, spy*, 5, 11, 17. Cf. **speculātor**.

**Explōrō**, 1 [PLV- (PLOV-)], *search out; try to find out, reconnoitre*, 4.

**Expugnō**, 1 [PAC-, PAG-, PVG-], *take by storm; take*, 9, 10, 12.

**Exspectō**, 1 [SPEC-], *look out for greatly; wait for, await*, 9, 16, 20.

**Exstruō**, 3, -struxi, -strūctum [STRV-], *pile up thoroughly; erect, construct*, 30.

**Extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj., *furthest; most distant, extreme*, 5, 8, 25; *last*, 11, 27, 33.

## F.

**Facile**, adv. [FAC-], *easily*, 1, 6, 17, 18, 19, 25.

**Facilis**, -e, adj. [FAC-], *able to be done; easy*, 27.

- Faciō**, 3, *fēcī*, factum; pass. *fiō*, *fierī*, factus [FAC-], *do, perform*, 3, 5, 6, etc.; *make*, 1, 2, 6, etc.; *cause, bring about*, 4, 11. See *coertus*.
- Facultās**, -ātis, F. [FAC-], *power of doing; opportunity*; pl. *resources, facilities*, 1.
- Fallō**, 3, *fefellī*, falsum, *cause to stumble; deceive*, 10.
- Fastigātus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of *fastigō*), *brought to a point; sloping*, 8. Cf. *adclivis, dēclivis*.
- Ferāx**, -ācis, adj. [1 FER-], *apt to bear; fertile*, 4.
- Ferē**, adv. [2 FER-, FRE-], *nearly, almost*, 23, 25, 31.
- Ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum* [1 FER-], *bear, bring, carry*, 10, 26, 28; *bear, endure*, 1, w. acc. and inf. *rush* (in pass.), 24.
- Fertilitās**, -ātis, F. [1 FER-], *fruitfulness, fertility*, 4.
- Ferus**, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce, ferocious*, 4, 15.
- Fidēs**, *fidē* (rare), F. [1 FID-], *trust, confidence; protection*, 3, 13, 14, 15.
- Filius**, -ī, M., *son*, 13.
- Finis**, -is, M. [2 FID-], *dividing thing; end, limit*, 6, 19; pl. *land, territory*, 2, 4, 5, etc.
- Finitimus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 FID-], *bordering upon; neighboring*, 2; pl. *neighbors*, 4, 16, 17, 28, 29, 31.
- Fiō**, *fierī*, factus, *be made, become*, see *faciō*.
- Flūmen**, -inis, N., *that which flows; river*, 5, 9, 10, etc.
- Fōrs**, *fōrte*, nom. and abl. only, F. [1 FER-], *that which brings; chance*, 21.
- Fōrte**, adv., abl. of *fōrs*, *by chance; perhaps*, 31.
- Fortis**, -e, adj. [2 FER-], *courageous, brave, stout-hearted*, 25, 33.
- Fortiter**, adv. [2 FER-], *bravely, gallantly*, 11, 21, 26.
- Fōrtūna**, -ae, F. [1 FER-], *fortune*, 16, 22, 31.
- Fossa**, -ae, F., *thing dug; ditch*, 5, 8, 12, 32.
- Frāter**, -tris, M., *brother*, 3.
- Fremitus**, -ūs, M., *dull roar; din, noise*, 24. Cf. *strepitus*.
- Frōns**, -ntis, F. [FVR-, FERV-], *brow; front*, 8, 23, 25.
- Frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj. [1 FVG-, FRVG-], *of grain, w. res, grain supply*, 2, 10.
- Frūmentum**, -ī, N. [1 FVG-, FRVG-], *thing eaten; corn, grain*, 3.
- Fuga**, -ae, F. [2 FVG-], *fleeing; flight, rout*, 11, 12, 23, 24, 26, 27.
- Fugīō**, 3, *fūgī*, — [2 FVG-], *flee, fly*, 11, 24.
- Fūmus**, -ī, M., *rushing thing; smoke*, 7.
- Funditor**, -ōris, M., *slinger*, 7, 10, 19, 24.
- Furor**, -ōris, M. [FVR-], *raging; blind passion, madness*, 3.

## G.

- Galba**, -ae, M., *king of the Suesiones*, 4, 13.
- Galea**, -ae, F. [2 CAL-, SCAL-], *covering; helmet*, 21.

**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 35.

**Gallus**, -ī, m., a *Gaul*, 1, 2, 4, 6, 12, 17, 24, 30.

**Gēns**, gentis, f., *what is begotten*; *race, tribe*, 28.

**Germānī**, -ōrum, m., *Germans*, 1, 3, 4.

**Gerō**, 3, gessī, gestum [GER-], *bear*; *carry on, go on with*, 9, 31, 35; *pass.*, *be carried on, take place*, 2, 26; *rēs gestae, operations, campaigns*, 35.

**Gladīus**, -ī, m. [CEL-, CER-], *sword*, 23, 25.

**Grātia**, -ae, f., *favor, popularity, influence*, 6.

**Gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy*; *severe, serious*, 25.

## H.

**Habēō**, 2 [HAB-], *grasp*; *have, possess*, 1, 3, 4, 8, 29; *with reflex pronoun, be*, 19.

**Hibernācula**, -ōrum, n. [HĪM-], *winter quarters*, 35.

**Hibernus**, -a, -um, adj. [HĪM-], *belonging to winter*; *hiberna (castra), winter quarters*, 1.

**Hīc**, haec, hōc, demonstr. pron. [CA-, CI-], *this, this of mine*, 1, 2, 4, etc.; *he, she, it*, 3, 4, 9, etc.

**Hiemō**, 1 [HĪM-], *pass the winter*, 1.

**Homō**, -inis, m. [HAM-], *man, person*, 1, 4, 6, 15, 27, etc.

**Honōs** (*honor*), -ōris, m., *honor, distinction*, 15.

**Hostis**, -is, m., *one who hurts*; *enemy*, 5, 7, 8, 9, etc.

## I.

**Iacēō**, 2, -ui, — [IA- IAC-], *be thrown*; *lie*, 27.

**Iaciō**, 3, iēcī, iactum [IA-, IAC-], *hurl, throw*, 6, 32, 33; *throw up, construct*, 12.

**Iam**, adv., *at this or that time*; *now*, 19; *neque iam, and no longer*, 5, 20, 25, 33.

**Ibī**, adv. [2 I-], *in that place, there*, 4, 5, 8, etc.

**Iccius**, -ī, m., *Belgian of high rank*, 3, 6, 7.

**Idē**, eadem, idem, determ. pron. [2 I-; 3 DA-], *the very*; *same*, 3, 6, 7, 16, etc.

**Idem** · t · idem, adv. [2 I-], *very same*; *again and again*, 19.

**Idōneus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 I-], *fit*; *suitable*, 8, 17.

**Ignis**, -is, m. [AG-], *fire*; *camp-fire*, 7; *signal-fire, beacon*, 33.

**Ille**, -a, -ud, gen. illius, demonstr. pron. [ANA-], *that*; *that one, the former*, 9, 33; *latter*, 19.

**Illyricum**, -ī, n., *coastland on eastern side of upper Adriatic*, 35.

**Im · pedīmentum** (inp-), -ī, n. [PED-], *thing entangling*; *hindrance*, 25; *pl., baggage*, 17, 24, 29; *baggage-train, pack-animals*, 17, 19, 24, 26. Cf. *sarcina*.

**Im · pediō** (inp-), 4 [PED-], *get the feet in, entangle*; *hinder, embarrass, make difficult*, 9, 10, 17, 20, 22, 23, 28.

**Im · pellō** (inp-), 3, -pulī, -pulsum [PAL-, PEL-, PVL-], *drive on*; *incite, influence*, 14.

- Im·perātor** (inp-), -ōris, m. [2 PAR-, POR-], commander (in chief), 25, 26.
- Im·perātum**, -ī, n., command, 3, 35.
- Im·perium** (inp-), -ī, n. [2 PAR-, POR-], command, order, 1, 20, 22; chief command, authority, 4, 23; power, control, 1, 3, 11.
- Im·perō** (inp-), 1 [2 PAR-, POR-], put a command upon; impose upon, command, 3, 21, 28, 32, 35; direct, dictate, 11, 33; w. dat. and subjunctive w. ut.
- Im·petrō** (inp-), 1 [POT-], accomplish; obtain, succeed in obtaining a request, 12; w. ut and subjunctive.
- Im·petus** (inp-), -ūs, m. [PET-], onset, attack, charge, 11, 19, 21, 24, 25; fury, violence, 6.
- Im·prō·visus** (inp-), -a, -um, adj. [VID-], not foreseen; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, without notice, 3.
- In**, prep. w. acc. and abl. [ANA-], into, to, 2, 3, 5; in, 5, 8, 29, etc.; in, within, on, 1, 2, 8, etc.; upon, over, 5, 29, 30; among, 25; in the case of, 32.
- In·cendō**, 3, -di, -cēsum, put fire in; set on fire, 7.
- In·cidō**, 3, -cidī, — [CAD-], fall into; happen, occur, 14. Cf. accidō, eveniō.
- In·cidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [2 SAC-, SEC-, SCĪD-, CĪD-], cut into, notch, 17.
- In·cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [CAP-], take in hand; begin, 2; w. compl. infin.
- In·citō**, 1 [CI-], set in rapid motion; urge on, hurry, hasten, 26. Cf. impellō.
- In·colō**, 3, -uī, — inhabit, live in, 4; live, dwell, 3, 35.
- In·crē·dibilis**, -e, adj. [CRAT-; 2 DA-], not to be believed; marvellous, incredible, 19.
- In·crepitō**, 1, —, —, make noise against; upbraid, taunt, abuse, 15, 30.
- In·cūsō**, 1 [CAV-], make charges against, accuse, rebuke, 15.
- Inde**, adv. [2 I-], from that; then, next, 19.
- In·dignitās**, -ātis, f., unworthiness; outrage, insult, 14.
- In·dī·ligen·ter**, adv. [1 LEG-, LIG-], carelessly, listlessly, 33.
- In·ducō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], lead into; draw on, cover, 33.
- Ind·uō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum, put into; put on, 21.
- In·eō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itum [1 I-], go into; enter upon, undertake, 33; begin, 2, 35.
- In·ermis**, -e, adj. [AR-], without armor; unarmed, 27.
- Inferior**, -ius, adj. (compar. of inferus), lower, 25; inferior, 8.
- Infirmus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of above), lowest; lowest part of, bottom, 18.
- In·ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, illātum (inlatum) [1 FER-], bring into; make upon, wage, 14, 29; inspire in, 25; bring upon, cause, inflict, 14, 32; carry forward, advance, 25, 26; bring in, import, 15; w. acc., or acc. and dat.

**In·flectō**, 3, -flectī, -flexum, *bend, bend down*, 17.

**In·gredior**, 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *go into, enter*, 4.

**In·imicus**, -a, -um, adj. [AM-], *not friendly; hostile*, 31. Cf. *hostis*.

**In·iquitās**, -ātis, f. [IC-, AIC-], *unevenness, inequality*, 22.

**In·iquus**, -a, -um, adj. [IC-, AIC-], *not equal; uneven, unfavorable*, 10, 23, 27, 33.

**In·itium**, -ī, n. [1 I-], *entering upon; beginning*, 9; w. partit. gen.

**In·iuria**, -ae, f. [IV-, IVG-], *thing done contrary to justice; wrong, injury, violence*, 28, 32, 33.

**In·itor**, 3, -nīxus, *lean upon, prop one's self on*, 27.

**In·rideō** (irr-), 2, -rīsī, -rīsum, *laugh in ridicule; laugh at, mock*, 30.

**In·sequor**, 3, -secūtus [SEC-], *follow close upon; follow up, pursue*, 19, 23.

**In·sidiae**, -ārum, f. [SED-, SID-], *taking a position at; stratagem, trap, snare*, 11.

**In·signe**, -is, n. [3 SAC-], *distinctive mark; sign, signal*, 20; *ornament, crest*, 21.

**In·statō**, 3, -stiti, — [STA-], *set one's self on; take a stand on*, 27; w. dat.

**In·star**, indecl., n., *image; used as pred. adj., like, in form of*, 17; w. gen.

**In·stō**, 1, -stiti, -statūrus [STA-], *stand upon; press forward*, 25.

**In·struō**, 3, -struxi, -strūctum [STRV-], *build into; arrange,*

*draw up*, 8, 20, 22; *build, erect*, 30.

**Intel·legō** (interl-), 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [1 LEG-], *choose between; understand, be aware, know, find out*, 8, 10, 33; w. acc. and infin.; 14, w. indir. quest.

**Inter**, prep. w. acc. [ANA-], *in the midst; between*, 9, 17; *among*, 1, 4, 6, 15, 19, 24, 31.

**Inter·cedō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum [CAD-], *go between; be between, move between*, 17.

**Inter·cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [CAP-], *take between; intercept*, 27.

**Inter·eā**, adv. [ANA-; 2 I-] *between these things; in the meantime, meanwhile*.

**Inter·ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [FAC-], *make to be between, break in pieces; kill, put to death*, 10, 11, 23, 25, 31. Cf. *concidō, occidō*.

**Inter·iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC-], *hurl between; place or plant among*, 17; *pass, intervene*, 22.

**Inter·im**, adv. [ANA-; 2 I-], *in the meantime, meanwhile*, 9, 12, 19, 26.

**Interior**, -ius, adj., compar. of obsolete *interus* [ANA-], *inner, interior of*, 2.

**Inter·mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum [MIT-], *make go apart; discontinue, cease*, 25.

**Inter·neciō**, -ōnis, f. [1 NEC-, NOC-], *complete destruction, annihilation*, 28.

**Inter·scindō**, 3, -scidī, -scissum

- [2 SAC-, SEC-, SCĪD-], *separate by splitting; cut down, hew away, demolish*, 9.
- Inter**·sum, -esse, -fui [ES-], *be between; be the concern of, concern*, 5; w. gen. of price.
- Inter**·vāllum, -ī, n. [1 VEL-, VAL-], *space between stakes of a palisade; distance, interval*, 23. Cf. spatium.
- In**·texō, 3, -uī, -xtum [TEC-, TAX-], *weave in; plait*, 33.
- Intrā**, prep. w. acc. [ANA-], *on the inside; within*, 4, 18, 19.
- Intrō**, 1 [ANA-], *enter, penetrate*, 17.
- Intrō**·ducō, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead in, bring in*, 5, 10.
- Intrō**·mittō, 3, -misi, -missum [MIT-], *cause to go within; let in, admit*, 33.
- Intrō**·sus, adv. [VERT-], *towards the inside; into the interior, within*, 18.
- In**·ūsītātus, -a, -um, adj. [1 AV-], *unusual, strange*, 31.
- In**·ūtīlis, -e, adj. [1 AV-], *useless; unserviceable, incapable*, 16; w. ad and acc.
- In**·venīō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come upon; find, learn*, 16; w. acc. and infin. Cf. cōgnōscō.
- In**·veterāscō, 3, -āvī, — [VET-], *become of long standing; gain a permanent foothold*, 1.
- In**·vidēō, 2, -vidī, -vīsum [VID-], *look towards; be jealous of, envy*, 31.
- I**·pse, -a, -um (gen. ipsius), *intensive pron.* [2 I-; 3 SA-], *per-*
- son or thing mentioned; self*, 3, 4, 5, etc.; sometimes conveniently rendered *he, they (the latter)*, 2, 20, 29.
- Is**, ea, id, determ. pron. [2 I-], *person or thing mentioned; he, that, this*, 1, 2, 3, etc.; akin to talis, foll. by subj. clause, 9, 16.
- Ita**, adv. [2 I-], *in the way stated; so, thus*, 11, 33; w. ut, *in the way that, just as*, as, 1.
- Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*, 29, 35.
- Ita**·que, conj. [2 I-; CA-, CI-], *and so; therefore*, 7, 22.
- Item**, adv. [2 I-], *even so; so, likewise*, 1, 8, 13, 21, 23, 26.
- Iter**, itineris, n. [1 I-], *going; march, route, line of march, road*, 6, 11, 12, 16, 17, 29.
- Iubeō**, 2, iūssī, iūssum [IV-, IVG-], *order, command, bid*, 5, 11, 25, 28, 33, 35; w. acc. and infin.
- Iū**·dicō, 1 [IV-, IVG-; DIC-], *declare what is law; judge, suppose, think*, 27.
- Iugum**, -ī, n. [IV-, IVG-], *joining; ridge, chain of hills*, 24.
- Iūs**, iūris, n. [IV-, IVG-], *thing binding; constitution, law*, 3.
- Iūstītia**, -ae, f. [IV- IVG-], *uprightness, justice, fairness*, 4.
- Iuvō**, 1, iūvī, iūtum [DIV-, DI-, DIAV-], *delight; help, assist*, 3.
- Iuxtā**, adv. [IV-, IVG-], *closely joined; close by, near at hand*, 26.

## L.

- L.**, prænomen *Lucius*, 11.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus*,



- most eminent of *Cæsar's* lieutenants, 1, 11, 26.
- Lapis**, -idis, *m.*, stone, 6.
- Lassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [LAG-], faintness, exhaustion, 23.
- Lateō**, 2, -uī, —, lie hidden; be concealed, 19.
- Lātītūdō**, -inis, *f.* [STER-, STRA-, STLA-], breadth; width, expanse, extent, 7, 8, 12, 29; lateral direction, 17.
- Lātus**, -a, -um, adj. [STER-, STRA-, STLA-], extended; broad, wide, 4, 27.
- Latus**, -eris, *n.* [PLAT-], thing extending; side, flank, 5, 8, 23, 25.
- Laxō**, 1 [LAG], loose; change to open order, widen, 25.
- Lēgātīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [3 LEG-], embassy, legation, 35.
- Lēgātus**, -ī, *m.* [3 LEG-], envoy, 6, 12, 15, 28, 31, 35; lieutenant, 2, 5, 9, 11, 20.
- Legiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [1 LEG-], levying; largest military division, consisting of 10 cohorts; legion, 2, 8, 17, etc.
- Legiōnārius**, -a, -um, adj. [1 LEG-], belonging to a legion; legionary, 27.
- Lēniter**, adv. [1 I-], gently, moderately, 8, 29.
- Levis**, -e, adj. [2 LEG-], lightly moving; light, 10, 24.
- Levitās**, -ātis, *f.* [2 LEG-], lightness; inconstancy, fickleness, 1.
- Lēx**, lēgis, *f.* [3 LEG-], thing read; written law, law, 3. Cf. iūs.
- Liberāliter**, adv. [LIB-; 1 I-], generously, graciously, 5.
- Liberī**, -erōrum, *m.* [LIB-], those who do as they desire, free persons; children (of free parents), 5.
- Littera**, -ae, *f.* [LI-], written character; pl., letter, letters; despatch, despatches, 1, 2, 35.
- Locus**, -ī, *m.*, that placed or situated; place, point, position, situation, 2, 4, 5, etc.; state, condition, 26; pl., loca, -ōrum, *n.*, region, section, tract, 4, 19.
- Longē**, adv. [2 LEG-], in length; far, at a distance, 4, 5, 19, 20, 21.
- Longus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 LEG-], long, lengthy, 21.
- Loquor**, 3, locūtus, speak, talk, 31.
- Lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, that which shines; light, dawn, daylight, 11.

## M.

- Māchinātīō**, -ōnis, *f.*, contrivance, engine, machine, 30, 31.
- Magis**, adv. [MAC-, MAG-], in a higher degree; more, 22, 32.
- Magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.* [MAC-, MAG-], magistracy, ruler, 3.
- Māgnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [MAC-, MAG-], greatness, size, height, 12, 27, 30.
- Māgnus**, -a, -um, adj. [MAC-, MAG-], increased; great, 4, 5, 6, etc.
- Māior**, -ius, adj., compar. of above, greater; māior nātū, elder, 13, 28.
- Malefīcium**, -ī, *n.* [MAL-; FAC-], evil-doing; outrage, hostile act, 28. Cf. iniūria, indignitās.

- Man·dō**, 1 [1 MA-, MAN-; 2 DA-], *put into one's hands; give in charge, enjoin, order*, 5; *entrust, consign*, 24; w. acc. and dat.
- Mani·pulus**, -ī, m. [1 MA-, MAN-; PLE-, PLV-], *thing filling the hand; (subdivision of a cohort), company, maniple*, 25.
- Mān·suētūdō**, -īnis, f. [1 MA-, MAN-; SOVO-, SVO-], *tame-ness; gentleness, kindness*, 14, 31. Cf. *clēmēntia*.
- Manus**, -ūs, f. [1 MA-, MAN-], *measuring thing; hand*, 13, 19, 30; *band, force*, 2, 5.
- Maritimus** (-umus), -a, -um, adj., *of the sea; on the coast, maritime*, 34.
- Mātūrō**, 1, *make ripe; hasten, make haste*, 5. Cf. *contendō*.
- Māximē**, adv., *superl. of magis*, q. v.; *most, very*, 4.
- Medius**, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle; middle of*, 7.
- Memoria**, -ae, f. [1 SMAR-, MAR-], *faculty of remembering; recollection, memory*, 4, 21.
- Menapii**, -ōrum, m., *Gallic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt*, 4.
- Mercātor**, -ōris, m. [2 SMAR-, MER-], *trader*, 15.
- Meritum**, -ī, n. [2 SMAR-, MER-], *thing deserved; deserts, merit*, 32.
- Miles**, -itis, m. [MĪL-], *one of the thousand; soldier*, 11, 20, 21, etc.
- Militāris**, -e, adj. [MĪL-], *of soldiers; pertaining to war, military*, 4, 22.
- Millē**, pl. *milia* or *millia*, num. adj. [MĪL-], *large number associated; thousand*, 4, 6, 7, etc.
- Minimē**, adv., *superl. of minus, least*, 33.
- Minor**, -us, adj. [2 MAN-, MI-], *smaller; minus, n., as adv., less*, 1, 7, 20; *not* (=nōn), 9.
- Miser**, -era, -erum, adj. [MIS-], *wretched, miserable*, 28.
- Miseri·cordia**, -ae, f. [MIS-], *heart-pity; pity, compassion*, 28.
- Mittō**, 3, *misi*, *missum* [MIT-], *let go; send, despatch*, 2, 3, 5, etc.
- Mōbilitās**, -ātis, f. [1 MV-, MOV-], *ability to be moved, agility; fickleness, inconstancy*, 1. Opp. to *stabilitās*. Cf. *levitās*.
- Modo**, adv. [2 MA-, MAD-], *in a measure; only, merely*, 17, 21.
- Modus**, -ī, m. [2 MA-, MAD-], *measuring thing; manner, fashion*, 31.
- Moenia**, -ium, n. [2 MV-], *things that ward off; walls, city walls*, 6, 31.
- Molestē**, adv. [1 MAC-, MAG-], *in a troublesome manner; molestē ferre, be annoyed or vexed*, 1; w. acc. and infin.
- Moneō**, 2 [1 MAN-, MEN-], *cause to think; direct*, 26; w. acc., foll. by clause w. ut.
- Mora**, -ae, f. [1 SMAR-, MAR-], *stopping, delay*, 15.
- Morini**, -ōrum, m., *tribe of Belgæ on Channel, near Calais*, 4.
- Moror**, 1 [1 SMAR-, MAR-], *linger, tarry, delay*, 7, 10, 11.
- Mōs**, *mōris*, m. [1 MA-, MAN-],

- will; custom, manner*, 13, 15. Cf. *cōsuētūdō*.
- Moveō**, 2, *mōvī*, *mōtum* [1 MV-, MOV-], *set in motion; move*, 2, 31.
- Mulier**, -eris, F. [MAL-], *woman, female*, 13, 16, 28.
- Multitūdō**, -inis, F., *large number, body*, 4, 5, 6, etc.; *quantity, number*, 10, 32.
- Multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*, pl. *many*, 11, 25, 29.
- Mūnimentum**, -ī, N. [2 MV-], *means of defence; fortification, defence*, 17.
- Mūniō**, 4 [2 MV-], *wall; fortify, erect defences about, protect, make, (castra)*, 5, 12, 19, 20, 29.
- Mūnitiō**, -ōnis, F. [2 MV-], *fortifying; fortification, works*, 33.
- Mūrus**, -ī, M. [2 MV-], *encircling thing; wall, city wall*, 6, 12, 13, 17, 29, 30, 32. Cf. *moenia*.
- N.**
- Nam**, co-ord. conj. [GNA-], *for*, 6, 14, 16, 19, 23, 30; as enclitic, *quisnam, really, pray*, 30. Cf. the postpositive *enim*.
- Nāscor**, 3, *nātus* [GEN-, GNA-], *be born; begin, arise*, 18.
- Nātiō**, -ōnis, F. [GEN-, GNA-], *birth; race, people*, 35. Cf. *populus, gēns*.
- Nātūra**, -ae, F. [GEN-, GNA-], *birth; nature, character*, 8, 15, 18, 22, 29.
- (**Nātus**, -ūs), only abl. sing., M. [GEN-, GNA-], *birth*, 13, 28.
- Nāvō**, 1 [GNA-, GNO-], *perform with knowledge and zeal; do one's best, exert one's self*, 25.
- Nē**, adv. and conj. [NA-], *no; adv., not*, 3, 17; conj., *that not, lest* (after expressions involving fear), 1, 5, 8, etc.
- Necessārius**, -a, -um, adj. [2 NEC-], *unavoidable; pressing, urgent*, 21.
- Necessitās**, -ātis, F. [2 NEC-], *unavoidableness; necessity, compulsion*, 11; *urgency*, 22.
- Neg·ōtium**, -ī, N., [1 AV-], *not leisure; business, task*, 2; *trouble, difficulty*, 17.
- Nē·mō**, —, dat. *nēminī*, abl. *wanting*, M. and F. [HAM-], *no man; nobody, no one*, 33.
- Ne·que** or **nec**, adv. [NA-; CA-, CI-], *and not, and so not*, 3, 5, 10, etc.; *neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*, 11, 12, 15, 25.
- Nē·quī·quam**, adv. [CA-, CI-], *not in any way; to no purpose, in vain*, 27.
- Nerviī**, -ōrum, M., *most warlike tribe of the Belgæ*, 4, 15, 16, etc.
- Neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen. -trius, adj. [CA-, CI-], *neither (of two)*, 9.
- Nē·ve** or **neu**, conj. [NA-], *and not; and that not*, 21.
- Nihil**, indecl., N. [NA-], *nothing*, 15, 26, 28; as adv., *not at all*, 17, 20.
- Ni·si**, conj. [NA-; SOVO-, SVO-], *if not, unless, except*, 6, 20, 32.
- Nōbilitās**, -ātis, F. [GNA-, GNO-], *being known; high birth*, 6.

**Noctū**, adv. [1 NEC-, NOC-], *by night*, 33.

**Nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, —, [VOL-], *not wish; be unwilling*, 1.

**Nōmen**, -inis, n. [GNA-, GNO-], *means of knowing; name*, 4, 6, 28.

**Nōminātim**, adv. [GNA-, GNO-]. *by name, expressly*, 25.

**Nōminō**, 1 [GNA-, GNO-], *name, mention*, 18.

**Nōn**, adv. [NA-; 2 I-], *not one; not*, 2, 6, 8, etc.

**Nōn·dum**, adv. [NA-; DIV-], *not yet*, 11.

**Nōn·nullus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 I-], *not none; some*, 1, 25.

**Nōnūs**, -a, -um, adj., *ninth*, 23.

**Nōs**, nostrum, pl. of ego, pron. [NV-], *we*, 9.

**Noster**, -stra, -strum, poss. pron. [NV-], *our, ours*, 1, 4, 8, etc.

**Novem**, num. adj., indecl., *nine*, 4.

**Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., *chief town of Suessiones*, 12.

**Novus**, -a, -um, adj. [NV-], *new, fresh*, 1, 2; *strange, novel*, 31; *superl., last, in the rear*, 11, 25, 26.

**Nox**, -ctis, f. [1 NEC-, NOC-], *night*, 6, 7, 12, 17.

**Nūdō**, 1, *make bare; bare, strip*, 6; *leave unguarded*, 23.

**N·ūllus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 I-], *not any; none, no*, 11, 15, 32; *as dat. of nēmō, no one*, 6, 35.

**Numerus**, -ī, m., *distributed thing; number, amount, numbers*, 4, 10, 17, 33.

**Numida**, -ae, m., *Numidian*, 7, 10, 24.

**Nun·c**, adv. [NV-; CA-, CI-], *now, at the present time*, 4.

**Nūntiō**, 1 [NV-], *announce, report*, 2, 26, 28, 29, 32.

**Nūntius**, -ī, m. [NV-], *person or thing newly come; messenger*, 7; *message, news*, 2, 6; *w. acc. and infin.*

## O.

**Ob**, prep. w. acc. [APA-], *towards; on account of*, 35.

**Ob·ducō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead towards; extend, construct*, 8.

**Ob·itus** (-ūs), m. [1 I-], *going to; destruction*, 29. Cf. *interneciō*.

**Ob·sēs**, -idis, m. and f. [SED-], *one staying in a place; hostage*, 1, 3, 5, 13, 15, 35.

**Ob·tineō**, 2, -uī, -tentum [1 TA-, TEN-], *lay hold of; have possession of, hold*, 4.

**Ob·veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come in the way of; come against, meet*, 23; *w. dat.*

**Oc·cāsus** (obc-), -ūs, m. [CAD-], *going down; setting*, 11.

**Oc·cidō** (obc-), 3, -cīdī, -cīsum [2 SAC-, SCID-, CID-], *strike against; kill, slay*, 10, 25, 33.

**Oc·cultus** (obc-), -a, -um, adj. (P. of oculō) [2 CAL-], *covered over; hidden, secret*, 18.

**Oc·cupō** (obc-), 1 [CAP-], *take hold of; cover, occupy*, 8; *take possession of, hold*, 1; *pass., be engaged, occupy one's self*, 19.

**Oc·currō** (obc-), 3, -currī, -cursum [CEL-, CER-], *run towards;*

- fall in with, meet; come against*, 21, 24, 27. Cf. *obveniō*.
- Ōceanus**, -ī, m., *ocean, Atlantic*, 34.
- Octāvus**, -a, -um, adj., *eighth*, 23.
- Octō**, num. adj., indecl., *eight*, 6, 7.
- Of ferō (obf-)**, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum [1 FER-], *bring towards; offer, bear, carry*, 21.
- O mittō**, 3, -misi, -missum [MIT-], *let go; neglect, leave untried*, 17.
- Omnis**, -e, adj. [AP-, OP-], *every, all, entire*, 1, 2, 3, etc.
- Onus**, -eris, n. [AN-], *burden; bulk, weight*, 30.
- Opera**, -ae, f. [AP-, OP-], *working; work, service*, 25.
- Opiniō**, -ōnis, f. [AP-, OP-], *thinking; impression, idea, expectation*, 3, 35; *reputation*, 8, 24.
- O portet**, 2, -uit, —, impers. [2 PAR-, POR-], *is necessary; must, ought*, 20; w. pass. infin. or acc. and infin.
- Op pidānus (obp-)**, -a, -um, adj. [PED-], *of a town; as noun, m., townsman, inhabitant of a town (other than Rome)*, 7, 33.
- Op pidum (obp-)**, -ī, n. [PED-], *on the ground; town*, 3, 4, 6, etc. Cf. *urbs; vicus*.
- Op portūnus (obp-)**, -a, -um, adj. [1 PAR-, PER-], *of what is opposite the harbor; suitable, convenient*, 8. Cf. *idōneus*.
- Op pūgnātiō (obp-)**, -ōnis, f. [PAC-, PVG-], *act of assaulting; mode of attack, assault*, 6.
- Op pūgnō**, 1 [PAC-, PVG-], *fight against; attack, storm, 6; carry by assault*, 12.
- (Ops)**, opis, f. (no nom. or dat. sing.) [AP-, OP-], *obtaining thing; help, aid*, 31; pl., *resources*, 14.
- Optimus**, -a, -um, adj. used as superl. of *bonus* [AP-, OP-], *best*, 10.
- Opus**, -eris, n. [AP-, OP-], *obtaining thing; work, siege-work*, 12, 19, 20, 21; *quantō opere, how greatly, māgnō opere, very much*, 5.
- Opus**, indecl. n. (really same word as above) [AP-, OP-], w. est, *is necessary, is need*, 8, 22.
- Ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *speaking; address, speech, words*, 5, 21.
- Ōrdō**, -inis, m. [OL-, OR-], *weaving; succession, order*, 11, 19, 22; *rank, line*, 11, 19.
- Orior**, 4, ortus [OL-, OR-], *bestir one's self; arise, be raised*, 24; *be descended from*, 4.
- Osismi**, -ōrum, m., *people of Gaul (in Brittany)*, 34.

## P.

- P.**, abbrev. of *Publius*, 25, 34.
- Pābulum**, -ī, n. [PA-], *thing affecting feeding; fodder, forage*, 2.
- Pācō**, 1 [PAC-], *bring to peace; subdue*, 1, 35.
- Paemāni**, -ōrum, m. *German tribe of the Belgæ*, 4.
- Paene**, adv., *nearly, almost*, 19, 24.

- Palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, *thing having wet clay; marsh, swamp, morass*, 9, 16, 28.
- Pandō**, 3, -dī, *passum* [2 PAT-, PAD-], *cause to go; spread out, extend*, 13.
- Pār**, *paris*, *adj.* [1 PAR-, PER-], *equal*, 18.
- Parātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (P. of *parō*) [2 PAR-, POR-], *brought; made ready, ready, prepared*, 3, 9, 21; *w. infin.* or expression of purpose.
- Pars**, *partis*, *f.* [2 PAR-, POR-], *that cut; part, portion*, 1, 4, 9, etc.; *quarter, direction*, 21, 24, 29; *point, side*, 5, 8, 22.
- Partim**, *adv.* (acc. of *Pars*) [2 PAR-, POR-], *by a dividing; partly*, 1, 33.
- Parvulus**, -a, -um, *dim. adj.* [PAV-], *very small; slight, unimportant*, 30.
- Passus**, -ūs, *m.* [1 PAT-], *going; double pace, step, pace*, 8, 18; *mīlia passuum, mile* (= 5000 feet), 6, 7, 11, 13, 16.
- Pate faciō**, 3, -feci, -factum [2 PAT-; FAC-], *make open; open, throw open*, 32.
- Pateō**, 2, -uī, — [2 PAT-], *stand open; be open, spread out, extend*, 7, 8.
- Pater**, -tris, *m.* [PA-], *accomplisher of protecting or nourishing; father*, 4.
- Pator**, 3, *passus*, *suffer, endure*, 31; *suffer, allow*, 15.
- Patrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [PA-], *of a father; of one's ancestors, ancestral*, 15.
- Paucus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [PAV-], *made to cease; pl. only, few*, 18; *as substantive, a few, small number*, 12.
- Paulatim**, *adv.* [PAV-], *by little and little; gradually, gently*, 8, 26.
- Paulis per**, *adv.* [PAV-; 1 PAR-], *for a short time*, 7.
- Paulō**, *adv.* (abl. *n.* of *paulus*) [PAV-], *by a little; a little*, 20.
- Paululum**, *dim. adv.* [PAV-], *very little; very slightly*, 8.
- Paulum**, *adv.* (acc. *n.* of *paulus*) [PAV-], *a little*, 25.
- Pāx**, *pācis*, *f.* [PAC-], *binding thing; peace*, 6, 13, 15, 29, 31, 32.
- Pedēs**, -itis, *m.* [PED-], *one that goes on foot; foot-soldier*, 24.
- Pedester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [PED-], *of infantry, infantry*, 17.
- Pedius**, -ī, *m.*, *Quintus Pedius*, *Cæsar's nephew, and lieutenant under him*, 2, 11.
- Pellis**, -is, *f.* [PLE-], *hide, skin*, 33.
- Pellō**, 3, *pepulī, pulsum* [PAL-, PEL-], *cause to move; drive, dislodge*, 24; *rout, defeat*, 17, 19, 24.
- Per**, *prep. w. acc.* [1 PAR-, PER-], *through; by, by means of*, 11, 20, 31; *on account of*, 16; *through, by way of*, 16; *over*, 10.
- Per ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [1 FER-], *carry through; bear, endure*, 14; *bear, spread among*, 35.
- Periclitōr**, 1 [1 PAR-, PER-], *test; prove, make trial*, 8.
- Periculum**, -ī, *n.* [1 PAR-, PER-],

- means of trying, trial; danger, peril*, 5, 11, 26.
- Per·mittō**, 3, -mīsi, -mīssum [MIT-], *let through; yield, give up*, 3, 31; w. acc. and dat.
- Per·moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum [1 MV-, MOV-], *stir up thoroughly; disturb, alarm*, 12, 24.
- Per·spiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectum [SPEC-], *see through*, 17, 18; *perceive clearly, find out, ascertain*, 11, 17, 32.
- Per·suadeō**, 2, -sī, -sum, *thoroughly advise; prevail upon, persuade*, 10, 16; w. dat. and subjunctive w. ut.
- Per·terreō**, 2 [TER-], *thoroughly frighten; demoralize, render panic-stricken*, 24, 27. Cf. per·turbō.
- Per·tineō**, 2, -uī, — [1 TA-, TEN-], *thoroughly hold; extend to*, 19.
- Per·turbō**, 1 [TVR-], *throw into utter confusion; disconcert, alarm*, 11, 21. Cf. permovēō.
- Per·veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come quite to; reach, arrive at*, 2, 11, 15, 17.
- Pēs**, pedis, m. [PED-], *going thing; foot*, 5, 18, 29, 30.
- Petō**, 3, -ivī and -iī, -itum [PET-], *fall upon; seek*, 20, 24; *aim at, make for*, 11, 23; *seek, make request, ask*, 12, 14, w. ut and subjunct.; *ask, beg*, 13, 31, w. acc.
- Pilum**, -ī, n. [PIS-], *crushing thing; heavy javelin*, 23, 27.
- Plānitēs** (-ēī), f. [PLAT-], *flatness; level stretch of country, plain*, 8.
- Plērum·que**, adv. (acc. n. of plērusque), *for the most part, generally*, 30.
- Plērus·que**, -raque, -rumque, adj. [PLE-; CA-, CI-], *larger part of; most of*, 4.
- Plūrimus**, -a, -um, adj. (used as superl. of multus) [PLE-, PLO-, PLV-], *most; acc. n. as adv., most*, 4.
- Pol·liceor**, 2 [LIC-, LIQV-], *offer very much; offer, promise*, 4, 35.
- Pondus**, -eris, n., *weighing thing; weight, bulk*, 29. Cf. onus.
- Pōnō** [for portsinō], 3, posuī, positum [1 SA-, SI-], *let down; place, establish, pitch*, 5, 7, 8, 13; *place, base on*, 11.
- Pōns**, pontis, m. [1 PAT-], *means of going; bridge*, 5, 9, 10.
- Populus**, 1 [SCAL-, SPOL-], *pour out people; lay waste, ravage, raid*, 6, 9. Cf. dēpopulor, vāstō.
- Populus**, -ī, m. [PLE-, PLO-], *the many; people, nation*, 1, 3, 13, etc. Cf. gēns.
- Por·rēctus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of porrigō) [REG-, RIG-], *stretched out, stretched forward*, 19.
- Porta**, -ae, f. [1 PAR-, POR-], *thing passed through; gate*, 6, 24, 32, 33.
- Portō**, 1 [1 PAR-, POR-], *bear along, carry, convey*, 5, 29.
- Poscō**, 3, poposcī, — [PREC-], *ask for urgently; demand, request*, 15. Cf. petō.
- Pos·sideō**, 2, -sēdī, -sessum [SED-], *have and hold, possess*, 4.
- Pos·sum**, posse, potui [POT-],

- be able, can, 1, 3, 4, etc.; amount to, be influential or powerful, 4, 8.*
- Post**, prep. w. acc. [POS-], *behind; after, 14, 29; behind, 5, 9, 19.*
- Post·eā**, adv. [POS-; 2 I-], *after this; afterwards, 17, 30, 32.*
- Post·quam**, conj. [POS-; CA-], *after that; after, as soon as, when, 5.*
- Postremō**, *at last, finally.*
- Postri·diē**, adv. (contr. from posterō diē) [POS-; DIV-, DI-], *on the day after, 12, 33; w. gen.*
- Postulō**, 1 [PREC-], *ask, demand, require, 4, 22, 33. Cf. poscō.*
- Potēns**, -entis, adj. [POT-], *able, mighty, powerful, 1, 4.*
- Potestas**, -ātis, f. [POT-], *ability; power, control, 3, 31, 34; power, ability, 6.*
- Potior**, 4 [POT-], *become master of; get control of, gain, 7, 24, 26; w. abl.*
- Potius**, adv. (compar.) [POT-], *rather, preferably, 10; foll. by quam.*
- Prae**, prep. w. abl. [PRO-, PRI-, PRAE-], *before; in comparison with, 30.*
- Prae·acūtus**, -a, -um, adj. [1 AC-], *sharpened in front; pointed, sharpened at the point, 29.*
- Prae·beō** [for praehibeō], 2 [HAB-], *hold forth; furnish, afford, 17.*
- Prae·ceps**, -ipitis, adj. [CAP-], *head foremost; headlong, in haste, 24.*
- Prae·dor** [for praehedor], 1, *make booty; plunder, raid, 17, 24.*
- Prae·ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [1 FER-], *bear before; place before, thrust forward, outdo, 27; w. acc. and dat.*
- Prae·ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [FAC-], *place over; put at the head of, place in command of, 11; w. acc. and dat.*
- Prae·mittō**, 3, -mīsi, -mīssum [MIT-], *send before; send in advance, 11, 17, 19.*
- Prae·scribō**, 3, -psī, -ptum [SCARP-, SCALP-], *write before; dictate, prescribe, direct, 20; w. dat. and indir. question.*
- Prae·sertim**, adv. [1 SER-, SVAR-], *by an arranging before; especially, particularly, 30.*
- Prae·sidium**, -ī, n. [SED-], *sitting before; guard, defence, support, 5, 19, 26, 29, 33; protection, safety, 11.*
- Prae·stō**, 1, -stitī, — [STA-], *stand before; excel, 15; put forth, exhibit, 27; be preferable, be better (impers.), 31.*
- Prae·sum**, -esse, -fuī [ES-], *be before; be in charge of, command, 6, 9; w. dat.*
- Praeter·eā**, *in addition.*
- Premō**, 3, pressī, pressum, *press; push closely, press hard, 24.*
- Primi·pīus**, -ī, m. [PRO-, PRI-; PIS-], *first centurion of the triarii, 25.*
- Primō**, adv. [PRO-], *at first, 8.*
- Primum**, adv. (acc. n. of primus) [PRO-, PRI-], *first thing; first, in the first place, 1, 10, 30; cum primum, as soon as, 2.*
- Primus**, -a, -um, adj. [PRO-,



- PRI-],** *first, foremost*, 10, 11, 17, etc.; as noun, *m., chief, leading man*, 3, 13.
- Prin·ceps**, -ipis, adj. [PRO-, PRI-; CAP-], *taking first place*; as noun, *leader, chief*, 5, 14. Cf. *primus*.
- Prior**, -ius, gen. -ōris, adj. [PRO-, PRI-], *former*; *those preceding, men in front*, 11. Opp. *novissimī*.
- Pri·stinus**, -a, -um, adj. [PRO-, PRI-; 1 TA-, TEN-] *former*; *former, old time*, 21.
- Prius**, adv. (acc. n. of prior) [PRO-, PRI-], *earlier, sooner*, 32; foll. by *quam*.
- Prius quam**, adv., conj. (= prius quam) [PRO-, PRI-; CA-], *sooner than, before*, 12; w. subj. Cf. *prius quam*, 32.
- Prō**, prep. w. abl. [PRO-, PRI-], *before*; *in front of, before*, 8; *in behalf of*, 14; *in proportion to, to the best of one's ability*, 25; *in accordance with, agreeably to*, 31.
- Prō cēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum [CAD-], *go forward*; *advance, proceed*, 20, 25.
- Pro·cul**, adv. [CEL-], *driven forward*; *at a distance, afar off*, 30.
- Prō cumbō**, 3, -cubui, -cubitum, *bend forwards*; *fall forward, sink to the ground*, 27.
- Proelior**, 1, *fight, contend*, 23. Cf. *dimicō, congregior*.
- Proelium**, -i, n., *fighting, fight*, 23, 25, 26, 27; *skirmish, engagement, battle*, 8, 9, 20, 21, 28, 30.
- Pro·fectiō**, -ōnis, f. [FAC-], *going away*; *setting out, departure*, 11.
- Pro·fiscor**, 3, -fectus [FAC-], *begin to go forward*; *set out, go, march*, 2, 21, 25, 35.
- Prō·figō**, 1 [FLAG-, FLIG-], *strike to the ground*; *rout, defeat*, 23. Cf. *pellō, cōniciō*.
- Pro·fugiō**, 3, -fūgi, — [2 FVG-], *flee before*; *flee for refuge, escape*, 14.
- Prō·gnātus**, -a, -um, adj. [GEN-, GN-, GNA-], *born, descended, sprung from*, 29.
- Prō·gredior**, 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *go forward*; *advance, proceed*, 10, 23. Cf. *prōcēdō*.
- Pro·hibeō**, 2 [HAB-], *hold before*; *hinder, prevent*, 4, w. acc. and infin.; *keep from, cut off*, 9, 28, w. acc. and abl.
- Prō·iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [IA-, IAC-], *cast forward*; *give up, abandon, renounce*, 15.
- Prō·moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum [1 MV-, MOV-], *move forward, advance*, 31.
- Prope**, adv. [PARC-, PLEC-], *near*; *nearly, almost*, 28, 32.
- Pro·perō**, 1 [2 PAR-, POR-], *hasten, make haste*, 11, 35.
- Propinquitās**, -ātis, f. [PARC-, PLEC-], *nearness, proximity, go, family connection, kinship*, 4. Cf. *adfinītās*.
- Propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [PARC-, PLEC-], *being near*; *near, close, adjacent*, 35, w. dat.
- Prō·pōnō**, 3, -posui, -positum [1 SA-, SI-], *place before*; *put forth, expose to view, display*, 20.
- Prop·ter**, prep. w. acc. [PARC-,

- PLEC-], *near; on account of*, 4, 8, 12, 16, 20.
- Propter** eā, adv. [PARC-, PLEC-], *on account of that; foll. by quod, for the reason (that), because*, 4; *foll. by indic.*
- Prō** pūgnō, 1 [PAC-, PAG-, PVG-], *fight before; fight in defence, make defensive sallies*, 7.
- Prō** sequor, 3, -secūtus [SEC-], *follow onward; pursue, follow after*, 11; *follow, address*, 5.
- Prō** spectus, -ūs, m. [SPEC-], *forward look; out-look, distant view, prospect*, 22.
- Prō** tinus, adv. [1 TA-, TEN-], *before one's self; at once, immediately*, 9.
- Prō** turbō, 1 [TVR-], *drive forward; drive off, frighten away*, 19. Cf. pellō.
- Prō** videō, 2, -vidī, -vīsum [VID-], *see before; look out, see, attend to*, 22.
- Prō** vincia, -ae, f. [VIC-], *territory acquired by conquest; province*, 29.
- Prō** volō, 1, -āvī, —, *fly forth; hasten forth, hurry forward*, 19.
- Proximē**, adv., superl. of prope  
•. [PARC-, PLEC-], *nearest; most, recently, last*, 8, 19.
- Proximus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of propior, no pos.) [PARC-, PLEC-], *nearest, closest*, 3, 12, 33; *next, following*, 27, (of time) 12, 35.
- Prū** dentia (for prō · videntia), -ae, f. [VID-], *seeing before; foresight, wisdom, prudence*, 4.
- Pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [PLE-, PLO-], *belonging to the people; w. rēs, republic, state, government*, 5.
- Puer**, -erī, m., *one begotten; boy, child*, 13, 28.
- Pūgna**, -ae, f. [PAC-, PAG-, PVG-], *thrusting thing; fight, battle*, 16, 25, 28, 29. Cf. proelium.
- Pūgnō**, 1 [PAC-, PAG-, PVG-], *fight, contend*, 8, 10, 21, 26, 27, 33. Cf. congregior, contendō, dīmicō, proelior.
- Q.
- Q.**, abbrev. for **Quīntus**, 2, 5, 9, 11.
- Quā**, adv. (abl. f. of quī) [CA-], *on which side; at what point, where*, 33.
- Quadrīn** · gentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [CEN-], *four hundred*, 8.
- Quaerō**, 3, -sīvī, -sītum, *seek; ask, enquire, make enquiry*, 4, 15; *look for, seek, try to find*, 21. Cf. petō.
- Quam**, adv. (acc. of quī) [CA-], *in what manner; than*, 10, 19, 20, 21, 22, 31, 32. Cf. āc (19).
- Quam** · vīs, adv. [CA-; VOL-], *as you will; as much as you like, any-so-ever, any*, 31.
- Quantus**, -a, -um, adj. [CA-], *how great, how many*, 4, 5, 14, 26, in indir. quest.; *as great as, as much as*, 8, 11. Cf. tantus.
- Quartus**, -a, -um, adj., *fourth*, 25.
- Quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four*, 33.
- Que**, enclitic conj. [CA-, CI-], *and*, 1, 2, 3, etc. Joins kindred expressions; sometimes

- couples a sentence to a preceding one. Cf. *et, atque*.
- Quī**, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron. [CA-, CI-], *who, which, what, that*, 1, 2, 3, etc.
- Quī dam**, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron. [CA-, CI-; 3 DA-], *certain one, some one*, 17.
- Qui dem**, adv. [CA-, CI-; 3 DA-], *certainly*; *nē . . . quidem*, enclosing emphatic word or expression, *not even*, 3, 17.
- Quī n**, conj. w. subj. [CA-, CI-; NA-], *by which not; but that, that, from*, 2, 3.
- Quī nam (quis)**, quae, quod, interrog. pron. [CA-, CI-], *for who? who, which, what, pray? what in the world?* 30.
- Quīn decim**, num. adj., indecl. [DEC-], *fifteen*, 2, 4, 30, 35.
- Quīn gentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [CEN-], *five hundred*, 28.
- Quīnquā gintā**, num. adj., indecl., *fifty*, 4, 33.
- Quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five*.
- Quis**, quae, quid? interrog. pron. [CA-, CI-], *who? which? what?* 4, 8, 11, etc. Indef. after *sī* and *nē*, *any one, any*, 8, 14, 32, 33.
- Quis quam**,—quicquam (quidq-), indef. pron. [CA-, CI-], *any, any at all*, 17; in negative clauses.
- Quis que**, quae, quid- (quod-), indef. pron. [CA-, CI-], *each, each one, every*, 4, 10, 11, 21, 22, 25.
- Quis quis**,—, quicquid (quidq-) or quodquod, indef. rel. pron. [CA-, CI-], *whatever, whatsoever, everything which*, 17.
- Quō**, rel. adv. (dat. and abl. of quī) [CA-, CI-], *in what place; (dat. use) where, whither*, 16, 17, 21; conj. (rel. adv.), = ut *eō*, *by which, so that, that*, 25.
- Quod**, conj. (acc. n. of quī) [CA-, CI-], *that; in that, because*, 1, 4, 10, etc.; *the fact that*, 17.
- Quo que**, adv. [CA-, CI-], *also, too, as well*, 10, 22; placed after word to be emphasized.

## R.

- Rāmus**, -ī, m., *growing thing; branch*, 17.
- Ratiō**, -ōnis, f. [RA-], *reckoning; consideration*, 10; *plan, method, system*, 19, 22.
- Re-, Red-**, *back, away*, in comp. only.
- Re·cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [CAP-], *take back; admit, receive*, 3, 15; with reflex. pron., *recover*, 12; *betake one's self, retreat, go*, 11, 19, 24. Cf. *sē cōferre*.
- Red·dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum [1 DA-], *give back; render*, 5.
- Red·eō**, -īre, -īī, -itum [1 I-], *go back; recede, decline, slope away*, 8.
- Red·igō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [AG-], *drive back; bring down, reduce*, 14, 28, 34; *render*, 27. Cf. *reddō*.
- Red·in·tegrō**, 1 [TAG-], *make whole again; renew, restore*, 23, 25, 27.
- Rēdonēs**, -um, m., *tribe of Britany*, 34.

- Re dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum** [DVC-], *lead back, 9.*
- Re ferō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum** [1 FER-], *bear back; report, announce, 33. Cf. adferō, renūntiō.*
- Re fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctum**, *break back; break open, tear open, 33.*
- Regiō, -ōnis, f.** [REG-], *directing, direction; region, district, locality, country, 4.*
- Rēgnum, -ī, n.** [REG-], *that which rules; power, control, 1.*
- Rē icīō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum** [IA-, IAC-], *hurl back; throw back, drive back, 33.*
- Re languēscō, 3, -guī, —** [LAG-], *lose energy, be weakened, 15.*
- Re linquō, 3, -līquī, -lictum** [LIC-, LIQV-], *leave behind, leave, 5, 8, 29.*
- Re liquus, -a, -um, adj.** [LIC-, LIQV-], *remaining; other, rest of, 2, 3, 5, etc.; as noun, m., the rest, the others, 10, 25.*
- Rēmī, -ōrum, m., people of Belgium on the Axona, 3, 4, 5, etc.**
- Re mittō, 3, -mīsī, -misum** [MIT-], *send back; hurl back, return, 27; relax, weaken, 15.*
- Rēmūs, -ī, m., a Remian, 6.**
- Re nūntiō, 1** [NV-], *bring back word; announce, report, 24; w. dat. and acc. and infin. Cf. adferō, referō.*
- Re pellō, 3, reppulī, -pulsum** [PAL-, PEL-, PVL-], *drive back, repulse, 10. Cf. rēiciō.*
- Repentīnō, adv.** (abl. of *repentīnus*), *suddenly, 33.*
- Re periō, 4, repperī, -pertum** [2 PAR-, POR-], *produce again; find, find out, ascertain, 9; w. acc. and infin., 4, 15.*
- Rēs, rei, f.** [RA-], *thing spoken of; thing, circumstance, matter, affair, business, fact, 1, 2, 3, etc.; rēs frumentāria, grain-supply, provisions, 2; rēs publica, state, republic, 5.*
- Re sistō, 3, -stitī, —** [STA-], *stand back; hold one's ground, maintain one's position, resist, 22, 23, 26.*
- Re spiciō, 3, -spēcī, -spectum** [SPEC-], *look back, look behind one, 24.*
- Re spondeō, 2, -ndī, -spōnsum**, *promise in return; reply, answer, 32.*
- Re tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum** [1 TA-, TEN-], *keep back; keep up, maintain, 21; keep back, reserve, 32, 33.*
- Re vertor, 3, -versus** (active in perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect: *reverti, reverteram, revertero*) [VERT-], *turn back; return, go back, 10, 14, 29, 35.*
- Re vocō, 1** (VOC-, VAG-), *call back, summon, 20.*
- Rēx, rēgis, m.** [REG-], *ruler; king, chieftain, 4, 13.*
- Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, 3, 4, 29, 35.**
- Rīpa, -ae, f., bank, river-bank, 5, 23, 27.**
- Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman, 1, 3, etc.; as noun, m., Roman, 10, 12, 13, etc.**

**Rubus**, -ī, m., *red-colored thing; bramble*, 17.

**Rumor**, -ōris, m., *sounding; report, rumor*, 1.

**Rūpēs**, -is, f. [RAP-, RVP-], *broken thing; cliff, steep rock*, 29.

**R. rursus**, adv. [VERT-], *turned back; again, back again*, 19, 23, 24.

## S.

**Sabinus**, -ī, m., *Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenant of Caesar*, 5.

**Sabis**, -is, m., *river Sambre in country of Nervii*, 16, 18.

**Saepēs**, -is, f. [1 SAC-, SAG-], *hedge*, 17, 22.

**Sagittarius**, -ī, m. [1 SAC-, SAG-], *of an arrow; archer, bowman*, 7, 10, 19.

**Salūs**, -ūtis, f. [SAL-, SER-], *being well; preservation, salvation, safety*, 27, 33; *well-being, welfare*, 5.

**Sarcinae**, -ārum, f., *bundle; luggage, personal baggage*, 17.

**Saxum**, -ī, n. [2 SAC-, SEC-], *fragment of rock; rock, stone*, 29.

**Scientia**, -ae, f. [2 SAC-, SEC-, SCI-], *knowing; knowledge*, 20.

**Scribō**, 3, -psī, -ptum [SCARP-, SCALP-], *scratch; write, give an account*, 29.

**Scūtum**, -ī, n. [SCV-, CV-], *covering thing; shield*, 21, 25, 27, 33.

**Sectiō**, -ōnis, f. [2 SAC-, SEC-], *cutting; lot of booty, booty*, 33.

**Secundum**, prep. w. acc. (acc. n. of secundus) [SEC-], *following; in the direction of, along*, 18.

**Secundus**, -a, -um, adj. [SEC-],

*following; second*, 11; *successful, favorable*, 9.

**Sed**, co-ord. conj., *adversative* [SOVO-, SVO-], *apart from; but*, 14, 17, 19, 20, 21, 32.

**Senātor**, -ōris, m. [SEN-], *old man; elder, senator*, 28.

**Senātus**, -ūs, m. [SEN-], *office of an old man; council, senate*, 5.

**Senonēs**, -um, m., *tribe on upper Seine*, 2.

**Sententia**, -ae, f. [SENT-], *thinking; opinion, view*, 10.

**Sentēs**, -ium, m. *thorns, briars, brambles*, 17.

**Septimus**, -a, -um, adj., *seventh*, 23, 26.

**Sequor**, 3, secūtus [SEC-], *follow; go along, accompany*, 17; *follow, result*, 22.

**Servitūs**, -ūtis, f. [1 SER-, SVAR-], *slavery, servitude, subjection*, 14.

**Servō**, 1 [SAL-, SER-], *save; keep, maintain*, 33.

**Sex**, num. adj., indecl., *six*, 5, 8, 19, 29.

**Sexāgintā**, num. adj., indecl., *sixty*, 4.

**Sexcenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [CEN-], *six hundred*, 15, 28.

**Si**, conj. [SOVO-, SVO-], *if, in case*, 5, 8, 9, etc.; *to see if, whether*, 9, w. indir. question.

**Si c**, adv. [3 SA-, CA-, CI-], *in this manner; so, in such a manner*, 32; *in following manner, as follows*, 4, 15.

**Signifer**, -erī, m. [3 SAC-, 1 FER-], *standard-bearer, ensign*, 25.

- Signi·ficiatīō**, -ōnis, f. [3 SAC-; FAC-], *pointing out; announcement, signal*, 33.
- Signi·ficiō**, 1 [3 SAC-; FAC-], *show by signs; indicate, show, 7; announce, make known*, 13; w. acc. and infin.
- Signum**, -i, n. [3 SAC-], *mark; signal, sign*, 20, 21; *military standard, ensign*, 21, 25, 26; — *convertere, face about, wheel*, 26; — *inferre, advance to attack, charge*, 25; ad — *cōsistere, rally round the standards*, 21.
- Silva**, -ae, f. [2 SER-, SVAL-], *wood, forest*, 18, 19.
- Silvestris**, -e, adj. [2 SER-, SVAL-], *of a wood; wooded*, 18.
- Simul**, adv. [2 SA-, SIM-], *together; at the same time*, 24.
- Si·ne**, prep. w. abl. [SOVO-], *without*, 5, 11, 15, 25, 31.
- Singulāris**, -e, adj. [2 SA-, SEM-, SIM-], *one by one; remarkable, extraordinary*, 24. Cf. *eximius*.
- Singuli**, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [2 SA-, SEM-, SIM-], *one to each; one at a time, separate, single*, 17, 20.
- Sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj. *left, on the left*, 23.
- Sōl**, -is, m. [2 SER-, SVAL-], *sun*, 11.
- Solli·citō**, 1 [SAL-; CI-], *move violently; stir up, instigate, incite*, 1.
- Sōlum**, adv. (acc. n. of *sōlus*) [SAL-, SER-], *alone, only*, 14.
- Sōlus**, -a, -um, adj. [SAL-, SER-], *alone, only, sole*, 4.
- Spatium**, -i, n. [SPA-, PA-], *race-course; space, distance*, 17, 30; *extent, time*, 11.
- Speciēs**, -iēi, f. [SPEC-], *seeing; sight, form, appearance*, 31.
- Speculātor**, -ōris, m. [SPEC-], *searcher; scout, spy*, 11. Cf. *explōrātor*.
- Spēs**, -ei, f. [SPA-, PA-], *hope, expectation*, 7, 25, 27, 33.
- Spiritus**, -ūs, m., *breathing; feeling, pride, haughtiness*, 4.
- Statim**, adv. [STA-], *in standing; at once, immediately*, 11. Cf. *prōtinus*.
- Statīō**, -ōnis, f. [STA-], *standing; guard, out-post, picket*, 18.
- Statuō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum [STA-], *make stand; fix, determine, decide*, 8, 31.
- Statūra**, -ae, f. [STA-], *standing upright; stature, size*, 30.
- Strepitus**, -ūs, m., *clashing, clatter, noise, din*, 11. Cf. *clāmor, fremitus*.
- Studeō**, 2, -uī, — [SPA-, PA-], *be eager; strive after, be bent upon, desire*, 1; *devote one's self to, pay attention to*, 17; w. dat.
- Studium**, -i, n. [SPA-, PA-], *zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm*, 7.
- Sub**, prep. w. abl. and acc., *under, beneath* 17; *near to, toward*, 11, 33.
- Sub·eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum [1 I-], *go under; go near, approach closely, come up*, 25, 27. Cf. *adpropinquō, succēdō*.
- Sub·itō**, adv. (abl. of *subitus*) [1 I-], *by coming on stealthily; suddenly, unexpectedly*, 19; *hastily, offhand*, 33. Cf. *repentinō*.

- Sub·mittō** (summ-), 3, -mīsi, -missum [MIT-], *send below; send to aid, despatch, send*, 6, 25; w. dat.
- Sub·ruō** (surr-), 3, -ruī, -rutum, *tear down below; undermine, dig under*, 6.
- Sub·sequor**, 3, -secūtus [SEC-], *follow closely, pursue*, 11, 19.
- Sub·sidium**, -ī, n. [SED-], *sitting behind; reserve forces, reserves*, 22, 25; *aid, assistance, help*, 6, 7, 8, 20, 26. Cf. *auxilium*.
- Suc·cēdō** (subc-), 3, -cessī, -cessum [CAD-], *go below; draw near, approach closely*, 6. Cf. *subeō*, *adpropinquō*.
- Suc·cessus** (subc-), -ūs, m. [CAD-], *going below; advance, close approach*, 20.
- Suessiōnēs**, -um, m., *German tribe north of the Marne*, 3, 4, 12, 13.
- Suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), reflex. pron. *referring to subject or speaker*, [SOVO-, SVO-], *self; of himself, of themselves*, etc., 1, 2, 3, etc.
- Sum**, esse, fui [ES-], *be; exist*, be, 1, 2, 3, etc.
- Summa**, -ae, f. (f. of summus, sc. rēs), *highest (thing); chief control, general management*, 4, 23.
- Summus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of superus), *highest, greatest, topmost*, 6, 23, 24, 32; *highest part, summit, top*, 18, 26.
- Sū·mō**, 3, -mpsi, -mptum [EM-], *take, claim, assume*, 4.
- Superior**, -ius, gen. -ōris, adj. *compar. of superus, higher, up-* per, 18, 23, 26; *preceding, former, past*, 20. Cf. *altior*; *pristinus*.
- Superō**, 1, *go over; defeat, vanquish*, 24. Cf. *vincō*.
- Super·sedeō**, 2, -sēdī, -sessum [SED-], *sit over; refrain from, omit, postpone*, 8; w. abl.
- Super·sum**, -esse, -fui [ES-], *be above; remain, survive*, 27, 28.
- Sup·plex** (subpl-), -icis, adj. [PARC-, PLEC-], *folding the knees beneath; suppliant, beseeching*, 28.
- Sup·plicātiō** (subpl-) -ōnis, f. [PARC-, PLEC-], *kneeling down; thanksgiving*, 35.
- Suprā**, adv., *on upper side; above, before*, 1, 18, 29.
- Sus·tentō**, 1 [1 TA-, TEN-], *keep holding up; hold out, maintain one's self*, 6, 14.
- Sus·tineō**, 2, -uī, -tentum [1 TA-, TEN-], *hold up under; withstand, sustain*, 11, 21; with reflex. pron., *hold out*, 6; *keep upright, stand up*, 25.
- Suus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. [SOVO-, SVO-], *of himself, his own, their own*, etc., 3, 4, 5, etc.; as noun, m., *their (his) countrymen, friends*, 6, 8, 9, etc.; n., *property, possessions*, 3, 13, 29.

## T.

- T.**, praenomen *Titus*, *T. Labienus*, 11, 26.
- Tam**, adv. [2 TA-], *so far; so, to such a degree*, 21.
- Tamen**, adv. [2 TA-], *in so far; still, however; nevertheless*, 8, 32.

- Tantulus**, -a, -um, dim. adj. [2 TA-], *so small; so trifling*, 30. Cf. *parvulus*.
- Tantus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 TA-], *of such size; so great, so much*, 3, 5, 6, etc.
- Tardō**, 1, *make slow, retard, check*, 25.
- Tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow (weary, exhausted)*, 25.
- Tegimenta** (*tegu-*), -ōrum, n., *means of covering; covering, cover*, 21.
- Tēlum**, -ī, n. [TEC-], *missile, weapon, javelin*, 6, 10, 21, 25, 27, 33.
- Tempus**, -oris, n. [1 TA-, TEN-], *time (in general)*, 5, 14, 19, 20, 21, 24, 33, 34; *moment*, 19; *time, period, day*, 17, 35; *emergency, crisis*, 22.
- Tendō**, 3, *tetendī, tentum (tēnsum)* [1 TA-, TEN-], *stretch; stretch out, extend*, 13. Cf. *pandō*.
- Teneō**, 2, -uī, — [1 TA-, TEN-], *hold, have*, 23; *hold, surround*, 24.
- Tener**, -era, -erum, adj. [1 TA-, TEN-], *tender, young*, 17.
- Terror**, -ōris, m. [TER-, TERS-], *frightening; great fear, fright, panic*, 12.
- Tertius**, -a, -um, adj., *third*, 1, 32, 33.
- Testūdō**, -inis, f., *having a shell; tortoise, bulwark of shields*, 6.
- Teutonī**, -ōrum (*-ēs, -um*), m., *German tribe*, 4, 29.
- Timeō**, 2, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid, entertain fears*, 26, w. *nē* followed by subjunctive.
- Titurius**, -ī, m., *Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenant of Cæsar's*, 5, 9, 10.
- Titus**, -ī, m., *praenomen of Labienus, Cæsar's lieutenant*, 11, 26.
- Tormentum**, -ī, n. [TARC- (TARP-), TREP-], *thing twisted; machine of war, engine for hurling*, 8.
- Tot·idem**, adj., indecl. [2 TA-; 3 DA-], *just as many, same number of*, 4.
- Tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. *totius*, adj. [TV-, TO-], *increased; whole, entire*, 4, 6, 19, 23.
- Trabs**, *trabis*, f. [TARC- (TARP-), TREP-], *beam, timber*, 29.
- Trā·dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum [1 DA-], *give over; hand over, give up, surrender*, 13, 15, 31, 32.
- Trā·dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [DVC-], *lead over; lead across, bring over*, 4, 5, 9, 10.
- Trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond*, 16, 35.
- Trāns·eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum [1 I-], *go over; go across, cross*, 9, 10, 23, 24, 27.
- Trāns·gredior**, 3, -gressus [GRAD-], *go, over; go across, cross*, 19. Cf. *trānseō*.
- Trāns·versus**, -a, -um, adj. [VERT-], *turned across; crosswise, at right angles, oblique*, 8.
- Trēs**, *tria*, gen. -ium, num. adj., *three*, 11, 18, 28, 33.
- Trēverī**, -ōrum, m., *Celtic tribe on the Moselle*, 24.
- Tribūnus**, -ī, m., *tribune*, 26.
- Tri·duum**, -ī, n. [DIV-, DI-, DIAV-], *three days' time*, 16.



**Tuba**, -ae, f., *trumpet*, 20.

**Tum**, adv. [2 TA-], *then, at that time*, 2, 6; *then, in addition, further*, 27, 29; *cum . . . tum, both . . . and*, 4.

**Tumultus**, -ūs, m. [TV-, TVM-], *swelling; confusion, uproar, noise*, 11. Cf. *strepitus*.

**Tumulus**, -ī, m. [TV-, TVM-], *swelling up; mound, hillock, hill*, 27.

**Turonēs**, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m., *tribe of Gaul on Loire*, 35.

**Turpitūdō**, -inis, f. [TARC- (TARP-), TREP-], *ugliness; disgrace, dishonor*, 27.

**Turris**, -is, f. [TVR-], *tower*, 12, 30, 33.

**Tūtus**, -a, -um, adj. (P. of *tueor*), *well guarded; safe, secure*, 5, 28.

### U.

**Ubi**, rel. adv. [CA-, CI-], *in which place; where*, 8, 35; *when, as soon as*, 6, 8, 9, 10, 19, 25, 30, 31.

**Ūllus**, -a, -um, gen. *ūllius*, dim. adj. [2 I-], *any one (at all), any*, 11, 15, 25; w. negative expression.

**Ūnā**, adv. (abl. f. of *ūnus*) [2 I-], *in one and the same place; at the same time, together*, 16, 17, 24, 28, 29; foll. by *cum*. and *abl*.

**Ūn·decimus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 I-; DEC-], *eleventh*, 23.

**Undī·que**, adv. [CA-, CI-], *whencesoever; from every quarter, from all sides*, 6, 10.

**Unēlli**, -ōrum, m., *tribe in Normandy*, 34.

**Ūnī·versus**, -a, -um, adj. [2 I-; VERT-], *turned into one; whole, all, in a mass*, 33.

**Ūnus**, -a, -um, gen. *-ūs*, num. adj. [2 I-], *one*, 2, 5, 6, 29, 31, 34; *one, one and the same*, 3, 5, 19, 20; *common, one alone*, 4, 22; *alone, only*, 83; *a*, 25.

**Urgeō**, 2, *ursi*, — [VERG-, VRG-], *press, press hard*, 25, 26.

**Ūsus**, -ūs, m. [1 AV-], *using; practice, experience*, 20; *use, advantage*, 9, 12.

**Ut** or **Ūti**, conj. [CA-, CI-], *in what manner; as*, 1, 7, 11, etc., w. indic.; *in order that, that, to*, 2, 8, 9, etc.; *that, so that*, 3, 4, 5, etc.

**Ūter·que**, -traque, -trumque, gen. *utriusque*, pron. [CA-, CI-], *both one and the other; each of two, both*, 8, 16, 25.

**Ūtor**, 3, *ūsus* [1 AV-], *use, make use of, employ, have*, 3, 7, 10, 25, 28; *use, practise*, 14, 28; *enjoy, maintain*, 32; w. *abl*.

### V.

**Vacuus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty, clear, free, unoccupied*; w. *ab* and *abl*, 12.

**Vadum**, -ī, n. [BA-, VA-], *place through which one can go; ford, crossing*, 9.

**Valeō**, 2, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, have influence*, 4, 17.

**Vāllum**, -ī, n. [1 VEL-, VAL-], *earthen wall; earth-works, rampart*, 5, 30, 33.

**Variūs**, -a, -um, adj., *spotted; changing, different*, 22.

- Vāstō**, 1, *make empty; lay waste, ravage*. Cf. *populor, dēpopulor*.
- Velocassēs**, -um, m., *one of the minor Belgian tribes*, 4.
- Vēn-dō**, 3, -dīdī (-ditum) [1 DA-], *place for sale; sell*, 33.
- Venetī**, see **Unellī**.
- Venetī**, -ōrum, m., *tribe of Bretagne*, 34.
- Veniō**, 4, vēnī, ventum [BA-, VA-, VEN-], *come, approach*, 2, 3, 5, etc.
- Verbum**, -ī, n. [VER-], *that spoken; word, discourse, intercession*, 14.
- Vereor**, 2 [1 VEL-, VER-], *feel awe; fear, be afraid*, 11.
- Vergō**, 3, —, — [VERG-], *bend, incline*, 18.
- Vērō**, adv. (abl. n. of vērus) [VER-], *in truth, in fact, but, however*, 2, 27, 31.
- Veromandui**, -ōrum, m., *Gallic tribe in modern Picardy*, 4, 16, 23.
- Versō**, 1 [VERT-], *keep turning; pass., be engaged in, be occupied about*, 24; *dwell, remain, be*, 1.
- Vesper**, -erī or -eris, m., *evening, nightfall*, 33.
- Vester**, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*.
- Vetō**, 1, -uī, -itum [VET-], *leave in old state; advise against, forbid*, 20.
- Vēxillum**, -ī, n. [VAG-, VEH-], *military ensign, banner, flag*, 20.
- Vēxō**, 1 [VAG-, VEH-], *keep carrying; harass, overrun*, 4.
- Victor**, -ōris, m. [VIC-], *conqueror, victor*, 28; in appos. *conquering, victorious*, 24.
- Vicus**, -ī, m., *row of houses; village, hamlet*, 7.
- Videō**, 2, vīdī, vīsum [VID-], *see, perceive*, 12, 19; *see, know*, 5, 10, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, w. acc. and infin.; *pass., seem, appear*, 11, 16, 18, 28, 33; *seem good, seem best*, 20.
- Vigilia**, -ae, f., *being awake; watch, night-watch*, 11, 33.
- Vimen**, -inis, n. [VI-, VIC-], *means of binding; willow, wither, wicker-work*, 33.
- Vincō**, 3, vīcī, victum [VIC-], *conquer, defeat*, 28. Cf. *superō*.
- Vinea**, -ae, f. [VI-, VIC-], *shelter for vines; covered shed, movable shelter*, 12, 30.
- Vinum**, -ī, n. [VI-, VIC-], *wine*, 15.
- Vir**, virī, m., *male, man*, 25, 33.
- Virtūs**, -ūtis, f., *manhood; bravery, valor*, 4, 8, 15, 21, 24, 27, 31, 33.
- Vīs**, vim, vī, f., *strength, power*, 30.
- Vitō**, 1, *shun, try to escape, avoid*, 25.
- Vix**, adv. [VIC-], *with effort; barely, scarcely, hardly*, 28.
- Voluntās**, -ātis, f. [VOL-], *will, wish, desire*, 4.
- Vōx**, vōcis, f. [VOC], *that which calls out; voice, utterance*, 13, 30.
- Vulgō** (**volgō**), adv. (abl. of vulgus) [VERG-, VALG-], *among the people; generally, commonly*, 1.
- Vulnērō**, 1 [2 VEL-, VOL-], *wound, injure*, 25.
- Vulnus**, -eris, n. [2 VEL-, VOL-], *wound, hurt*, 23, 25, 27.



# ETYMOLOGICAL VOCABULARY.



The relation in meaning of some of the words in certain groups to the root is sometimes obscure or even impossible to be traced with absolute certainty. Sometimes the relation is obscured by the omission in this vocabulary of an interlinking word, because it does not occur in the text. Let us take an example close at hand, the root AID- and the noun *aestuārium*. The notion "inlet" seems very remote from the notion "burn." But *aestuārium* is formed from *aestus* (for *aedtus*), the first meaning of which is *the raging of fire, waves or billows of heat*. As we might expect, a secondary meaning is, *the raging of water, waves, billows*, in the proper sense. From the force of the suffix *-rium*, *aestuārium* should mean a *seam-sh, or a tract overflowed at high tide*; and from this the notion "inlet," the place through which the tide rushes, comes naturally enough.

The following roots, with their meanings, have been mostly taken from the excellent Elementary Latin Dictionary of Dr. Charlton T. Lewis.

1. AC-, sharp, pierce.  
**Acīēs**, edge, line of battle.  
**Præ-acūtus**, sharpened at the point.  
**Ācr-iter**, sharply.  
**Acervus**, heap.  
**Co-acervō**, heap up.

2. AC-, swift.  
**Equēs**, horseman.  
**Equester**, of horsemen.  
**Equitātus**, cavalry.  
 AG-, drive.  
**Agō**, drive, lead.  
**Cō-gō** [for *con-agō*], drive together, compel.  
**Red-igō**, drive back, reduce.  
**Ager**, land.  
**Āgmen**, marching column.  
**Īgnis**, fire.  
**Ex-agitō**, harass.

AID-, burn.  
**Aedi-ficiū** [from *aedēs*, hearth], building.  
**Aestās** [for *aid-tās*], summer.  
**Aestuārium** [for *aid-t-*], inlet.

1. AL-, AR-, feed, grow, raise.  
**Altus**, high.  
**Altitudō**, height.  
**Arduus**, steep.  
**Arbor**, tree.

2. AL- (ALI-), other, strange.  
**Alius**, other.  
**Aliās**, at some other time.  
**Aliēnus**, another's.  
**Al-iter**, other-wise.  
**Alter**, the other (of two).

AM-, love.  
**Amīcus**, friend.  
**Amīcitia**, friendship.  
**In-imīcus**, unfriendly, hostile.

AN-, breathe.  
**Animus**, spirit.  
**Ex·animō**, make breathless.  
**Onus** (as the cause of panting),  
 weight.

ANA-, pronominal stem, third  
 person.  
**In**, in, into.  
**Inter**, between.  
**Inter·eā**, meanwhile.  
**Inter·im**, meanwhile.  
**Interior** [compar. of obs. *interus*],  
 inner.  
**Intrā**, within.  
**Intrō**, enter.  
**?ille** [old form *ollus*, from *onolus*],  
 that one.

ANT-, before, against.  
**Ante**, before, formerly.  
**Antiquitas**, of old.

AP-, OP-, lay hold of work,  
 help.  
**(Ops)**, aid.  
**Opus**, work.  
**Opera**, exertion, service.  
**C·ōpla** [for *com·opia*], supply.  
**Co·epī** [for *com·apiō*], begin.  
**Optimus**, best.  
**Omnis** [for *apnis*], all.  
**Opiniō**, impression.

APA-, away, from.  
**Ab**, from, by.  
**Ap·ud**, among.  
**Ob**, against.

AR-, fit.  
**Armō**, arm.  
**Arma**, arms.  
**Armātūra**, equipment.  
**In·ermis**, unarmed.

ARC-, shut in, keep off.  
**Ex·ercitus**, army.  
**Ex·ercitātus**, trained.

1. AV-, mark, desire, delight.  
**Audēō**, dare.  
**Audāc·ter**, boldly.

**Ūtor** [for *avtor*], use.  
**Ūsus**, use, experience.  
**In·ūsitātus**, unusual.  
**In·fītilis**, useless.  
**Neg·ōtium** [for *nec·avtium*], busi-  
 ness.

2. AV-, mark, notice.  
**Audiō**, hear.  
**Ex·audiō**, overhear.

AVG-, grow.  
**Auctōritās**, power.  
**Auxilium**, aid.

BA-, VA-, VEN-, go.  
**Ar·bitror** [for *ad·batror*], believe.  
**Du·bitō**, doubt, hesitate.  
**Vadum**, ford.  
**Veniō**, come.  
**Ad·ventus**, arrival.  
**Circum·veniō**, outflank.  
**Con·veniō**, meet.  
**Dē·veniō**, come to.

**E·ventus**, outcome.

**In·veniō**, find.

**Ob·veniō**, fall in with.

**Per·veniō**, arrive at.

C*A*-, C*I*-, pronominal stem,  
*who*.

**Qui**, *who*.

**Qui·dam**, a certain one.

**Qui·dem**, certainly.

**Quin** [for *qui·nē*], but that.

**Quā**, where.

**Quō**, whither.

**Quod**, because.

**Quis**, *who*?

**Qui·nam**, *who*, pray?

**Quis·quam**, any.

**Nē qui·quam**, in vain.

**Quis·quis**, whoever.

**Quis·que**, each one.

**Quo·que**, also.

**Cum** (*quom*), when.

**Quam**, than.

**Quam·vis**, how-so-ever.

**Post·quam**, after.

**Prius·quam**, sooner than.

**Quantus**, how great.

**Que**, and.

**Ita·que**, and so.

**Ne·que**, and not.

**Ubi** [for *quō·bi*], where.

**Undi·que** [for *cunde·que*], from  
all sides.

**Cēteri**, the others.

**Cis**, this side of.

**Citerior**, hither.

**Citrā**, this side of.

**Ut** or **Uti** [for *cuti* or *quoti*], as,  
in order that.

**Uter·que** [for *quoter·que*], each.

**Ne·uter**, neither.

**Coti·diē**, daily.

**Hi·c** [for *hi·ce*], this.

**Nun·c** [for *num·ce*], now.

**Si·c** [for *si·ce*], so.

C*A*D-, fall.

**Cadō**, fall.

**Ac·cidō** (*adc-*), befall.

**In·cidō**, happen.

**Cadāver**, dead body.

**Cāsus**, happening.

**Oc·cāsus** (*obc-*), setting.

**Cēdō**, give way.

**Ac·cēdō** (*adc-*), approach.

**Dis·cēdō**, depart.

**Dis·cessus**, departure.

**Ex·cēdō**, withdraw from.

**Inter·cēdō**, intervene.

**Prō·cēdō**, advance.

**Suc·cēdō** (*subc-*), approach.

**Suc·cessus** (*subc-*), close ap-  
proach.

**Ar·cessō** [for *ad·cēdō*], sum-  
mon.

1. C*A*L-, C*AR*-, call.

**Con·cilium**, meeting.

**Clāmor**, shouting.

2. C*A*L-, S*CAL*-, cover, hide.

**Oc·cultus** (*obc-*), hidden.

**Galea**, helmet.

**Domī·cilium**, dwelling-place.

**Cēlō**, hide.

CAP-, take, hold.

**Ac·cipiō** (acc-), receive.

**In·cipiō**, begin.

**Inter·cipiō**, intercept.

**Re·cipiō**, receive.

**Captivus**, captive.

**Oc·cupō** (obc-), take into possession.

**Caput**, head.

**Prae·ceps**, headlong.

**Prin·ceps**, leader.

CAR-, SCAR-, hard, scrape.

**Cortex**, bark.

**Cornū**, horn, wing.

CAV-, watch.

**Causa**, cause.

**In·cūsō**, accuse.

CEL-, CER-, strike, drive.

**Gladius** [for *cladius*], sword.

**Celeritās**, swiftness.

**Celer·iter**, swiftly.

**Pro·cul**, at a distance.

**Cursus**, running.

**Con·currō**, run together.

**Dē·currō**, run down.

**Oc·currō** (obc-), meet.

**Ex·cursiō**, sally.

CEN-, hundred.

**Centum**, hundred.

**Centuriō**, centurion.

**Du·centi**, two hundred.

**Quadri·genti**, four hundred.

**Quin·genti**, five hundred.

**Sex·centi**, six hundred.

1. CER-, CRE-, make.

**Crēber**, numerous.

**Corpus**, body.

2. CER-, CRE-, part.

**Dē·cernō**, decide upon.

**Dē·certō**, fight decisively.

**Certus**, sure.

CI-, rouse.

**In·citō**, urge on.

**Solli·citō** (sōli-), stir up.

CLĪ-, lean.

**Clē·mentia**, mildness.

**Ad·clivis** (acc-), sloping upward.

**Ad·clivitās** (acc-), upward slope.

**Dē·clivis**, sloping downward.

CRAT-, faith.

**Crē·dō**, [for *crat·dō*], believe.

**In·crē·dibilis** [for *in·crat·dibilis*], incredible.

CVR-, CIR-, curve.

**Circum**, around.

**Circi·ter**, about.

**Circu·itus**, circumference.

**Cruciātus**, torture.

1. DA-, give.

**Dō**, give.

**Dē·dō**, give up.

**Dē·diticius**, one who has surrendered.

**Dē·ditiō**, surrender.

**Ē·ditus** [P. of *ē·dō*], rising.

**Red · dō**, give back.

**Trā · dō** [for *trāns · dō*], give over.

**Vēn · dō** [for *vēnum · dō*], sell.

2. DA-, put.

**Ab · dō**, hide.

**Crē · dō**, believe.

**In · crē · dibilis**, incredible.

**Man · dō**, commission.

3. DA-, pronominal stem, third person.

**Ī · dem**, the same.

**Quī · dam**, a certain one.

**Quī · dem**, indeed.

**Tot · idem**, just as many.

DEC-, ten.

**Decem**, ten.

**Decimus**, tenth.

**Decumānus** (*decī-*), of the tenth (cohort), in the phrase, *porta decumāna*, the main entrance to a Roman camp.

**Ūn · decimus**, eleventh.

**Duo · decimus**, twelfth.

**Quīn · decim**, fifteen.

DĪC-, DIC- (*DAC-*), show, point.

**Dīcō**, say.

**Doceō**, teach.

**Iū · dīcō**, judge.

(*Dīcīō*), control.

**Con · dīcīō**, condition.

DIV-, DĪ-, DIAV-, shine.

**Dīvinus**, divine.

**Dīēs**, day.

**Cotī · dīē**, daily.

**Postrī · dīē** [for *posterō diē*], next day.

**Trī · duum**, three days' time.

**Dum** [for *dium*], while.

**Nōn · dum**, not yet.

**Dīū**, for a long time.

**Iuvō**, [for *diuvō*], aid.

**Ad · iuvō**, aid.

DOM-, build.

**Domus**, home.

**Domī · cillium**, dwelling-place.

**Domesticus**, of home.

DVA-, DVI-, apart, two.

**Duo**, two.

**Duo · decimus**, twelfth.

**Duo · dē · vīgintī**, eighteen.

**Du · bitō**, doubt, hesitate.

**Du · centī**, two hundred.

**Du · plex**, two-fold.

**Bellum** [for *duellum*], war.

DVC-, lead.

**Dux**, leader.

**Dūcō**, lead.

**Ad · dūcō**, bring to.

**Con · dūcō**, gather.

**Dē · dūcō**, lead off.

**Ē · dūcō**, lead out.

**In · dūcō**, cover.

**Intrō · dūcō**, lead in.

**Ob · dūcō**, extend.

**Re · dūcō**, lead back.

**Trā · dūcō** [for *trāns · dūcō*], lead across.



EM-, take.

Emō, buy.

Ex·imius, excellent.

Sū·mō [for *sub·imō*], take.

ES-, be, live.

Sum [for *esum*], be.

Ab·sum, be away.

Dē·sum, be lacking.

Inter·sum, be between.

Prae·sum, command.

Super·sum, survive.

FAC-, put, make.

Faciō, do.

Fiō, passive of *faciō*, become.

Cōn·ficiō, accomplish, wear out.

Dē·ficiō, fail.

Ef·ficiō, bring about.

Inter·ficiō, kill.

Pate·faciō, throw open.

Prae·ficiō, place in command.

Pro·ficiātor, put one's self forward, set out.

Pro·fectiō, setting out.

Facilis, easy.

Facile, easily.

Aedi·ficiū, building.

Ampli·ficiō, enlarge.

Dif·ficilis (*disf-*), difficult.

Dif·ficultās (*disf-*), difficulty.

Facultās, opportunity.

Male·ficiū, outrage.

Signi·ficiō, announce.

Signi·ficiātiō, signal.

FEN-, FEND-, strike.

Dē·fendō, ward off, defend.

Dē·fēnsiō, defence.

Dē·fēnsor, defender.

# 1. FER-, bear.

Ferō, bear,

Ad·ferō (*aff-*), bring to.

Cōn·ferō, bring together.

Dē·ferō, carry.

Īn·ferō, bring upon.

Of·ferō (*obf-*), carry.

Per·ferō, endure.

Prae·ferō, place before, out-do.

Re·ferō, bring back.

Fertilitās, fertility.

Ferāx, fertile.

Fōra, chance.

Fōrtūna, fortune.

Signi·fer, standard-bearer.

# 2. FER-, FRE-, hold, fix.

Ferē, almost.

Cōn·firmō, give assurance, reassure.

Fortis [for *fortis*], brave.

Fort·iter, bravely,

# 1. FID-, FID-, bind, trust.

Fidēs, faith.

Cōn·fidō, trust.

# 2. FID-, split.

Finis [for *fidnis*], limit.

Finitimus, neighboring.

Ad·finitās, connection by marriage.

# FLAG-, FLIG-, strike.

Cōn·fligō, contend with.

Prō·fligō, defeat.

1. FVG-, FRVG-, use, enjoy.  
**Frūmentum** [for *frūgimentum*],  
grain.

**Frūmentārius**, of grain.

2. FVG-, bend, flee.  
**Fuga**, flight.  
**Fuglō**, flee.  
**Pro·fuglō**, flee.

**FVR-, FERV-**, rage, swell.  
**Furor**, frenzy.  
**?Frōns**, front.

**GEN-, GN-, GNA-**, beget.  
**Nāscor (gn-)**, arise.  
**Ē·nāscor**, grow out.  
**Nātus**, birth.  
**Nātiō**, nation.  
**Nātūra**, nature.  
**Prō·gnātus**, sprung from.

**GER-**, carry.  
**Gerō**, carry on.  
**Ag·ger (adg-)**, mound.

**GNA-, GNO-**, know.  
**Nam**, for.  
**Nāvō** [for *gnāvō*], perform with  
knowledge and zeal.  
**Cō·gnōscō**, learn.  
**Nōbilitās**, high birth.  
**Nōmen**, name.  
**Nōminātim**, by name.  
**Nōminō**, mention.

**GRAD-**, walk.  
**Ad·gredior (agg-)**, attack.  
**Con·gredior**, meet.  
**Ē·gredior**, go from.  
**In·gredior**, enter.

**Prō·gredior**, advance.  
**Trāns·gredior**, cross.

**HAB-**, have.  
**Habeō**, have.  
**Dē·beō** [for *de·hibeō*], owe to.  
**Prae·beō** [for *prae·hibeō*], furnish.  
**Pro·hibeō**, restrain.

**HAM-**, man.  
**Homō**, man.  
**Nē·mō** [for *ne·homō*], nobody.

**HĪM-**, cold.  
**Hiemō**, pass the winter.  
**Hibernus** [for *hiemernus*], of  
winter.  
**Hibernācula**, winter quarters.

1. I-, AI-, go.  
**Ad·eō**, approach.  
**Ad·itus**, approach.  
**Circu·itus** [for *circum·itus*], cir-  
cumference.  
**Ex·eō**, go forth, set out.  
**In·eō**, enter upon.  
**In·itium**, beginning.  
**Ob·itus**, destruction.  
**Red·eō**, return.  
**Sub·eō**, approach closely.  
**Sub·itō**, suddenly.  
**Trāns·eō**, cross.  
**Iter**, route.  
**Aetās** [for *aevitās*], age.

From **iter** is the *adv.*, *ending-iter*  
or *-ter*, as in *aequāl·iter* for  
*aequale·iter*, *al·iter*, *audāc·-*  
*ter*, *celer·iter*, *circi·ter*, *dili-*  
*gent·(t)er*, *fort·iter*, *lēn·iter*,  
*in·diligent·(t)er*.

2. I-, AI-, pronominal stem,  
third person, demonstrative.

**Is**, this one.

**Eō**, there.

**Inter·eā**, meanwhile.

**Inter·im**, meanwhile.

**Post·eā**, afterwards.

**Propter·eā**, for the reason(that).

**Ī·dem**, the same.

**Iden·t·idem** [for *idem·et·idem*], again and again.

**I·pse**, self.

**Ībī**, there.

**Inde**, thence.

**De·inde**, thereupon.

**Ita**, thus.

**Ita·que**, therefore.

**Item**, likewise.

**?I·dōneus**, suitable.

**Ūnus** [for *oenus*], one.

**Ūnā**, together.

**Ūni·versus**, all.

**Ūn·decimus**, eleventh.

**Ūllus** [for *ūnulus*], any.

**Nūllus** [for *ne·ūnulus*], none.

**Nōn·nūllus**, some.

**Nōn** [*ne·oenum (ūnum)*], not.

**Nōn·dum**, not yet.

IA-, IAC-, go, send.

**Iaciō**, throw.

**Ad·iciō**, hurl.

**Circum·iciō**, place around.

**Cōn·iciō**, hurl.

**Dē·iciō**, throw down from.

**Dē·iectus**, slope.

**Inter·iciō**, place between.

**Prō·iciō**, hurl.

**Rē·iciō**, hurl back.

**Iaceō**, lie.

IC-, AIC-, like.

**Aequāl·iter**, evenly.

**Ad·aequō**, equal.

**In·iquus**, unfavorable.

**In·īquitās**, inequality.

IV-, IVG-, bind, yoke.

**Iugum**, ridge.

**Con·iungō**, join together.

**Cūnctus** [for *cōn·iūnctus*], all.

**Iūs**, right.

**Iūstitia**, justice.

**Con·iūrō**, conspire.

**In·iūria**, wrong.

**Iū·dicō**, judge.

**Iubeō**, order.

**Iūxtā** [for *iūgistā*], close by.

LAG-, loose.

**Re·languēscō**, lose energy.

**Lassitūdō**, exhaustion.

**Laxō**, widen.

1. LEG-, LIG-, gather.

**Dē·ligō**, choose.

**Dī·ligen·ter** [for *dis·ligent·ter*],  
scrupulously.

**In·dī·ligen·ter**, carelessly.

**Ē·ligō**, choose.

**Intel·legō**, understand.

**Legiō**, legion.

**Legiōnārius**, of a legion.

2. LEG-, run, spring.

**Levis** [for *legvis*], light.

**Levitās**, lightness.

**Longus**, long.

**Longŏ**, far.

3. **LEG-**, lie, be fixed.

**Lēx**, law.

**Lēgātus**, envoy.

**Lēgātiŏ**, embassy.

**LI-**, pour, smear.

**Littera**, written character.

**Dŏ · leŏ**, destroy.

**LIB-**, desire.

**Liberī**, children (the free).

**Liberāl · iter**, generously.

**LIC-**, **LIQV-**, let, leave.

**Pol · liceor** [for *prō · liceor*], promise.

**Re · linquŏ**, leave behind.

**Re · liquus**, remaining.

1. **MA-**, **MAN-**, measure.

**Manus**, hand.

**Man · dŏ** [for *manus · dŏ*], commission.

**Mani · pulus**, handful, manipule.

**Mān · suētūdŏ**, gentleness.

**Dī · mētior**, measure out.

**Mŏs**, custom.

2. **MA-**, **MAD-**, measure, moderate.

**Modus**, manner.

**Modo**, only.

**Com · modŏ** (*con-*), easily.

**Ad · com · modŏ** (*accon-*), fit.

**MAC-**, **MAG-**, big.

**Magis** [for *magius*], more.

**Māximŏ**, most.

**Māgnus**, great.

**Māgnitūdŏ**, greatness.

**Māior** [for *magior*], greater.

**Magistrātus**, office.

**Molestŏ**, in a troublesome manner.

**MAL-**, crush, grind.

**Male · ficium**, outrage.

**Mulier**, woman.

1. **MAN-**, **MEN-**, man, mind, stay.

**Moneŏ**, advise.

**Dŏ · mōnstrŏ**, point out.

**Clē · mentia**, kindness.

2. **MAN-**, **MI-**, small, less.

**Minor**, smaller.

**Minus**, less.

**Minimŏ**, least.

**Ad · ministrŏ**, execute.

**MĪL-**, associate.

**Mille**, thousand.

**Miles**, soldier.

**Militāris**, of war.

**MIS-**, wretched.

**Miser**, wretched.

**Miseri · cordia**, pity.

**MIT-**, send, throw.

**Mittŏ**, send.

**Ā · mittŏ**, lose.

**Com · mittŏ** (*con-*), join together.

**Dī · mittŏ**, despatch.

**Ē · mittŏ**, let fly.

**Inter·mittō**, halt.  
**Intrō·mittō**, send in.  
**O·mittō** [for *ob·mittō*], neglect.  
**Per·mittō**, grant.  
**Prae·mittō**, send in advance.  
**Re·mittō**, send back.  
**Sub·mittō**, send as aid.

1. MV-, MOV-, move.  
**Moveō**, move.  
**Com·moveō**, startle.  
**Per·moveō**, rouse.  
**Prō·moveō**, move forward.  
**Mōbilitās**, nimbleness.  
**Com·mūtātīō**, change.

2. MV-, shut, fasten.  
**Com·mūnis** (comm-), common.  
**Moenia**, walls.  
**Mūniō**, fortify.  
**Circum·mūniō**, blockade.  
**Mūnimentum**, fortification.  
**Mūnitiō**, fortification.  
**Mūrus** [old *moerus*], wall.

NA-, no.  
**Nē**, that not, lest.  
**Ne·que**, and not.  
**Nē·ve** or **Neu**, and that not.  
**Ni·hil**, nothing.  
**Ni·al** [for *nē·si*], if not.  
**Nōn** [for *ne·oenum* (*ūnum*)], not.  
**Nōn·dum**, not yet.  
**Quin** [for *qui·nē*], but that.

1. NEC-, NOC-, kill, hurt.  
**Inter·neciō**, annihilation.  
**Nox**, night.  
**Noctū**, by night.

2. NEC-, bind.  
**Necessitās**, necessity.  
**Necessārius**, necessary.  
 NV-, now (pronominal stem).  
**Noster**, our.  
**Nunc** [for *num·ce*], now.  
**Novus**, new, fresh.  
**Nūntius** [for *noventius*, from obs. *noveō*, from *novus*], messenger.  
**Nūntiō**, report.  
**Re·nūntiō**, report.

OL-, OR-, grow, rise.  
**Orior**, arise.  
**Ad·orior**, assault.  
**Ōrdō**, order.

PA-, feed.  
**Pater**, father.  
**Patrius**, ancestral.  
**Pābulum**, fodder.

PAC-, PAG-, PVG-, fix, peg.  
**Pāx**, peace.  
**Pācō**, subdue.

**Pūgnō**, fight.  
**Ex·pūgnō**, storm.  
**Op·pūgnō** (obp-), assault.  
**Op·pūgnātiō** (obp-), assault.  
**Prō·pūgnō**, defend.

PAL-, PEL-, PVL-, drive, scatter.  
**Pellō**, drive.  
**Ad·pellō** (app-), accost.  
**Com·pellō** (comp-), drive together.

**Ex·pellō**, drive out.

**Im·pellō (inp-)**, incite.

**Re·pellō**, drive back.

1. PAR-, POR-, PER-, through,  
far, reach, try.

**Pār**, equal.

**Per**, through.

**Ex·perior**, test.

**Periclitōr**, test.

**Periculum**, danger.

**Porta**, gate.

**Portō**, bear.

**Op·portūnus (obp-)**, suitable.

**Paulis·per**, for a short time.

2. PAR-, POR-, part, breed.

**Parātus**, ready.

**Com·parō (comp-)**, get ready.

**Pro·perō**, hasten.

**Im·perātor (inp-)**, commander.

**Im·perō (inp-)**, command.

**Im·perium (inp-)**, command.

**A·pertus** [for *ab·partus*], open.

**Re·periō**, find.

**Pars**, portion.

**Partim**, partly.

**O·portet** [for *ob·portet*], is necessary.

- PARC-, PLEC-, bind, weave,  
fold.

**Du·plex**, two-fold.

**Sup·plex (subp-)**, suppliant.

**Sup·plicatiō (subp-)**, thanksgiving.

**Prope**, near [with metathesis of *r* and change of *c* to *p*. Cf. roots SAC and SCAL].

**Proximus** [*superl. of propior*], nearest.

**Proximē**, last.

**Propinquus**, near.

**Propinquitās**, proximity.

**Ad·propinquō (app-)**, approach.

**Propter**, near, on account of.

**Propter·eā**, for the reason (that).

1. PAT-, go.

**Passus**, step.

**Pōns**, bridge.

2. PAT-, PAD-, spread, open.

**Pateō**, extend.

**Pate·faciō**, open.

**Pandō**, extend.

PAV-, little.

**Paucus**, few.

**Parvulus**, slight.

**Paulum**, a little.

**Paulō**, a little.

**Paululum**, very slightly.

**Paulātim**, gradually.

**Paulis·per**, for a short time.

PED-, tread.

**Pēs**, foot.

**Pedēs**, foot-soldier.

**Pedester**, of infantry.

**Ex·pedītus**, unencumbered.

**Im·pediō (inp-)**, hinder.

**Im·pedimenta (inp-)**, baggage.

**Op·pidum** [for *ob·pedum*], town.

**Op·pidānus (obp-)**, townsman.

PET-, fly.

**Petō**, seek.

**Im·petus (inp-)**, charge.

PIS-, crush.

**Pilum** [for *pislum*], spear.

**Primi · pilus**, first centurion of the *triarii*.

PLAT-, spread, flat.

**Latus** [for *platus*], side.

**Plānitīēs** [for *platnitīēs*], plain.

PLE-, PLO-, PLV-, fill.

**Com · pleō** (comp-), fill.

**Plērus · que**, the most of.

**Plūs**, more.

**Plūrimum**, most.

**Com · plūrēs** (comp-), many.

**Mani · pulus**, manipule.

**Am · plius**, more.

**Ampli · ficō**, enlarge.

?**Pellis**, skin.

**Populus**, people.

**Pūblicus** [for *populicus*], belonging to the state.

PLV-, PLOV-, wash, flow.

**Ex · plōrō** [for *ex · ploverō*], reconnoitre.

**Ex · plōrātor**, scout.

POS-, behind.

**Post**, after.

**Post · eā**, afterwards.

**Post · quam**, after.

**Postri · diē** [for *posterō diē*], next day.

POT-, master.

**Potius**, rather.

**Pos · sum** [for *potis sum*], be able, can.

**Potēns**, able.

**Potestās**, power.

**Potior**, gain.

**Im · petrō** (inp-), obtain.

PREC-, pray.

**Dē · precor**, petition against.

**Poscō** [for *porcscō*], demand.

**Postulō**, demand.

PRO-, PRI-, PRAE-, before.

**Prō**, before.

**Prior**, preceding.

**Prius · quam**, sooner than.

**Pri · tinus** [for *prius · tinus*], former.

**Primus**, first.

**Primum**, in the first place.

**Prīmō**, in the first place.

**Prin · ceps** [for *prius · ceps*], leader.

**Primi · pilus**, first centurion of the *triarii*.

**Prae**, before.

RA-, join, count.

**Ratiō**, reason.

**Rēs**, thing.

RAP-, RVP-, snatch, break.

**DI · riptō** [for *dis · riptō*], sack.

**Ē · ruptiō**, sally.

**Rūpēs**, cliff.

REG-, RIG-, stretch, guide.

**Por · rigō** [for *prō · regō*], stretch out.

**Regiō**, direction.

**Rēx**, ruler.

**Rēgnum**, control.

1. SA-, SI-, sow, strow, sift.  
**Pōnō** [for *port*·(*prō*) *sinō*], place.  
**Dē·pōnō**, put off.  
**Prō·pōnō**, display.

2. SA-, SIM-, together, like.  
**Singulī**, one at a time.  
**Singulāris**, extraordinary.  
**Simul**, at the same time.  
**Cōn·similis**, altogether like.

3. SA-, pronominal stem.  
**SI·c** [for *si·ce*], so.  
**I·pse**, self.

1. SAC-, SAG-, fasten.  
**Sagittārius**, archer.  
**Saepe** [with *p* for *c*], hedge.

2. SAC-, SEC-, SCĪD-, CĪD-, split.  
**Saxum**, rock.  
**Sectiō**, booty.  
**Scientia**, knowledge.  
**Inter·scindō**, cut off.  
**Con·cidō**, cut to pieces.  
**In·cidō**, cut into.  
**Occidō**, kill.

3. SAC-, show.  
**Signum**, signal.  
**Signi·fer**, standard-bearer.  
**Signi·ficō**, announce.  
**Signi·ficātiō**, signal.  
**In·signe**, sign.

SAL-, SER-, save.  
**Salūs**, safety.  
**Solus**, alone.  
**Solum**, only.

**Solli·citō** (**sōll**), stir up.  
**Servō**, keep.  
**Cōn·servō**, preserve.

SCAD-, CAD-, cover.  
**Castra**, camp.  
**Castellum**, redoubt.

SCAL-, SCAR- (with *p* for *c*, SPOL-), scrape.  
**Calamitās**, [for *scalamitās*], disaster.  
**Dē·spoliō**, deprive.  
**?Populor**, **Dē·populor**, ravage.

SCAND-, climb.  
**A·scendō** (**adsc-**), mount.  
**A·scēsus** (**adsc-**), ascent.

SCARP-, SCALP-, cut, scratch.  
**Scribō**, write.  
**Cōn·scribō**, enroll.  
**Prae·scribō**, dictate.

SCV-, CV-, cover, hide.  
**Scūtum**, shield.  
**Custōdia**, guard.

SEC-, follow.  
**Sequor**, follow.  
**Cōn·sequor**, attain.  
**In·sequor**, follow up.  
**Prō·sequor**, pursue.  
**Sub·sequor**, follow closely.  
**Secundus**, favorable.  
**Secundum**, according to.  
**Con-** [for *scom-*], with.  
**Cum**, with.  
**Cōpia** [for *com·opia*], supply.



**Con · trā**, against.

**Con · trārius**, opposite.

**SED**-, **SID**-, sit.

**Pos · sideō** [for *prō · sideo*], own.

**In · sidiae**, stratagem.

**Ob · sēs**, hostage.

**Prae · sidium**, garrison.

**Sub · sidium**, assistance.

**Super · sedeō**, omit.

**Cōn · sidō**, settle.

**SEN**-, old.

**Senātor**, elder, senator.

**Senātus**, senate.

**SENT**-, feel.

**Sententia**, opinion.

**Cōn · sentiō**, agree.

**Cōn · sēnsus**, agreement.

1. **SER**-, **SVAR**-, string, bind.

**Dē · serō**, abandon.

**Prae · sertim**, especially.

**Servitūs**, slavery.

2. **SER**-, **SVAL**-, bright.

**Sōl**, sun.

**Silva**, forest.

**Silvestris**, wooded.

1. **SMAR**-, **MAR**-, think.

**Mora**, delay.

**Moror**, delay.

**Memoria**, remembrance.

**Com · memorō (conm-)**, mention.

2. **SMAR**-, **MER**-, ascribe.

**Meritum**, merit.

**Mercātor**, trader.

**SOVO**-, **SVO**-, own.

**Suī**, of himself, etc.

**Suus**, his, etc.

**Cōn · suēscō**, be accustomed.

**Cōn · suētūdō**, custom.

**Mān · suētūdō**, gentleness.

**Sed**, but.

?**SI**, if.

?**SI · ne**, without.

?**NI · si**, if not.

**SPA**-, **PA**-, draw, stretch.

**Spatium**, space.

**Spēs**, hope.

**Dē · spērō**, give up hope.

?**Studeō**, strive after.

?**Studium**, eagerness.

**SPEC**-, see, spy.

**Cōn · spiciō**, espy.

**Per · spiciō**, ascertain.

**Re · spiciō**, look back.

**Ex · spectō**, await.

**Cōn · spicor**, espy.

**Speciēs**, form.

**Speculātor**, spy.

**Cōn · spectus**, sight.

**Dē · spectus**, view downward.

**Prō · spectus**, view forward.

**STA**-, stand, set.

**Cōn · stanter**, uniformly.

**In · stō**, press forward.

**Prae · stō**, excel, show.

**Cōn · sistō**, take position.

**Dē · sistō**, stop.

**In · sistō**, take a stand.

**Re·sistō**, resist.  
**Statuō**, determine.  
**Cōn·stituō**, determine.  
**Statim**, at once.  
**Statīō**, picket.  
**Statūra**, stature.

STER-, STRA-, STLA-, strow,  
 spread.  
**Lātus** [old, *stlātus*], broad.  
**Lātitūdō**, width.

STRV-, spread, heap.  
**Ex·struō**, erect.  
**Īn·struō**, arrange.

1. TA-, TEN-, stretch.  
**Pris·tinus** [for *prius·tinus*], former.  
**Pro·tinus**, at once.  
**Tener**, tender.  
**Teneō**, hold.  
**Con·tineō**, restrain, keep.  
**Dis·tineō**, separate.  
**Ob·tineō**, hold.  
**Per·tineō**, extend to.  
**Re·tineō**, detain.  
**Sus·tineō** [for *subs·tineō*], sustain.  
**Sus·tentō** [for *subs·tentō*], hold out.  
**Tendō**, stretch.  
**Con·tendō**, hasten.  
**?Tempus**, time.

2. TA-, pronominal stem, third  
 person, demonstrative.  
**Tam**, so.  
**Tantus**, so great.

**Tantulus**, so trifling.  
**Tamen**, still.  
**Tot·idem**, just as many.  
**Tum**, then.

Also the final element in *au·tem*,  
*au·t*, *i·ta*, *i·ta·que*, *u·t*.

TAG-, touch, seize.  
**At·tingō** (adt-), touch.  
**Red·in·tegrō**, renew.

TARC (TARP-), TREP-, turn,  
 twist.  
**Tormentum**, engine for hurling.  
**Turpitūdō**, disgrace.  
**Traba**, beam.

TEC-, TAX-, weave, arrange.  
**In·texō**, weave in.  
**Tēlum** (for *teclum*), spear.

TEM-, TAN-, cut.  
**Con·temptus**, contempt.  
**Con·tumēlia**, insult.

TER-, TREM-, TERS-, shake,  
 scare.  
**Dē·terreō**, prevent.  
**Per·terreō**, thoroughly frighten.  
**Terror**, fright.

TV-, TVM-, TAV-, TO-, swell.  
**Tumulus**, mound.  
**Tumultus**, uproar.  
**Tōtus**, whole.

TVR-, harry, crowd.  
**Per·turbō**, throw into confusion.  
**Prō·turbō**, drive off.  
**?Turris**, tower.

VAG-, VEH-, move, carry.

**Vēxillum**, flag.

**Vēxō**, harass.

1. VEL-, VAL-, VER-, cover,  
guard.

**Vallum**, rampart.

**Inter·vallum**, distance.

**Vereor**, fear.

2. VEL-, VOL-, tear, pluck.

**Vulnus**, wound.

**Vulnerō**, wound.

VER-, say.

**Verbum**, word.

**Vērō**, in truth.

VERG-, VRG-, VALG-, slope,  
press.

**Vergō**, incline.

**Urgeō**, press.

**Vulgō** (**volgō**), generally.

VERT-, turn.

**Ā·vertō**, turn away.

**Con·vertō**, turn around.

**Re·vertō**, return.

**Re·vector**, return.

**Versō**, turn about, *pass.* dwell.

**Ad·versus**, opposite.

**Dī·versus**, turned away.

**Intr·orsus** [for *intrō·versus*],  
within.

**R·orsus** [for *re·versus*], again.

**Trāns·versus**, at right-angles.

**Uni·versus**, all.

VET-, VIT-, year, old.

**In·veterāscō**, grow old in.

**Vetō**, forbid.

VI-, VIC-, twine.

**Vinea**, covered shed.

**Vinum**, wine.

**Vimen**, willow, wither.

VIC-, conquer.

**Vincō**, conquer.

**Victor**, victorious.

**Prō·vincia**, province.

**Vix**, barely.

VID-, see.

**Videō**, see.

**In·videō**, envy.

**Prō·videō**, procure.

**Prū·dentia** [for *prō·videntia*],  
wisdom.

**Im·prō·visō** (**inp-**), unexpect-  
edly.

VIR-, man.

**Vir**, man.

**Virtūs**, valor.

VOC-, VAG-, call.

**Con·vocō**, call together.

**Re·vocō**, call back.

**Vōx**, voice.

VOL-, will, wish.

**Voluntās**, wish.

**N·ōlō** [for *nē·vōlō*], be unwilling.

**Quam·vis**, howsoever.

**At;** but.

{ **At·que**, and.  
  { **Ac**,

**Et**, and.

**Et·iam**, even.

**Ad**, to.

**Ap·ud**, among.

**Ex**, **E**, from, out of.

**Extrēmus**, furthest.

**Locus** [for *silocus*], place.

**Con·locō** (coll-), place.

**Multus**, much.

**Multitūdō**, large number.

**Proellum**, battle.

**Proellor**, fight.

**Superior**, higher.

**Summus** [for *supimus*], highest.

**Suprā**, above.

**Superō**, overcome.

**Tardus**, slow.

**Tardō**, retard.

**Trēs**, three.

**Tri·duum**, three days' time.

**Tribūnus**, military tribune.

**Tertius**, third.













